ISSUED OUT
WITH PERMISSION ONLY.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018

AN INTRODUCTION

TO THE

LATIN TONGUE;

FOR THE USE OF YOUTH.

A NEW EDITION.

BY C. D. YONGE, B. A.

AUTHOR OF

"AN ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON," "YONGE'S GRADUS AD PARNASSUM,"

ETC. ETC.

ETON,

PRINTED AND SOLD BY E. P. WILLIAMS:

SOLD ALSO AT THE ETON WAREHOUSE, NO. 5, BRIDGE STREET,
BLACKFRIARS, LONDON.

MDCCCLXIV.

1864

00013377

INDEX.

	Pag.
Alphabet ...	5
Parts of Speech ..	6
NOUNS—	
Numbers, Cases, &c.	*ib.*
Declension of Substantives	8
,, Adjectives	15
Comparison of Adjectives	19
Pronouns ..	21
Declension of ..	22
VERBS—	
Voices ..	24
Moods ..	25
Tenses ..	26
Gerunds and Supines	27
Participles ..	*ib.*
Numbers and Persons	28
The Verb *Esse* ..	*ib.*
Declension of Verbs *Regular*	31
Conjugation of ditto—Active	32
,, ,, Passive	45
Declension of *Irregular* Verbs ..	58
Conjugation of ditto	*ib.*
Defective Verbs ...	63
Adverbs ..	65
Conjunctions ..	*ib.*
Prepositions ..	66
Interjections ..	68
The Three Concords ..	*ib.*

	Pag.
PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS; or, the Genders of Nouns	73
QUÆ GENUS; or, Nouns Heteroclite ..	77
AS IN PRÆSENTI; or, the Perfect and Supines of Verbs	80
SYNTAXIS—	
Concordantiæ Tres ..	88
Nominum Constructio—	
Substantiva ..	92
Adjectiva ..	93
Pronominum Constructio	98
Verborum Constructio	99
Verba Infinita	107
Gerundia ..	109
Supina ..	110
Verba Impersonalia	*ib.*
De Tempore ..	111
Spatium Loci ..	112
Nomina Locorum ..	*ib.*
Adverbiorum Constructio	113
Conjunctionum Constructio	114
De Relativo ..	118
Præpositionum Constructio	119
Interjectionum Constructio	121
PROSODIA ..	122

Propria quæ Maribus construed ...	132
Nouns Heteroclite construed	140
As in Præsenti construed	144
Syntaxis construed ...	157
Prosodia construed ..	206

AN INTRODUCTION

TO THE

LATIN TONGUE.

The Latin Letters are thus written:

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small, or common.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named *Vowels; a, e, i, o, u, y.*

The rest are called *consonants.*

A *vowel* makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e.*

A *consonant* cannot be sounded without a vowel, as *be.*

Consonants are divided into liquids, double letters, and mutes.

The *liquids* are *l, m, n, r:* The *double letters* are *j, x, z:* The remaining letters are called *mutes.*

A *syllable* is a distinct sound of one, or more letters, pronounced in a breath.

A *diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable. There are six diphthongs, *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe.**

* Besides these six we meet with *ua, ue, ui, uo,* sounded in one syllable, occurring only after the consonants, *g, q,* or *s;* but they want one distinguishing property of diphthongs, for diphthongs are naturally *long* in quantity, while these are sometimes long and sometimes short. And some consider that in these combinations *u* should be considered a consonant, and written *v.*

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are Seven:
Noun, Pronoun, Verb, declined;
Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined.

OF A NOUN.

Nouns are of two kinds, *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.

A *substantive* expresses by itself alone the object of which we are speaking; as, *hŏmo*,* a man; *ōrātor*, an orator; *līber*, the book.

An *adjective* always requires to be joined to a substantive, of which it shows the nature or quality; and is either a common adjective; as, *bŏnus puer*, a good boy; or a *participle* (formed from, and being part of a verb); as, *fŭrens fœmĭna*, a woman raging.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

Nouns have two numbers; the singular, and the plural.

The singular speaketh but of one; as *păter*, a father:
The plural speaketh of more than one; as, *patres*, fathers.

CASES OF NOUNS.

Nouns have six cases in each number:
The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The *nominative* case names the subject of a sentence, and marks the quarter from which an action proceeds; as, *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The *genitive* case denotes connection between two objects, and in English is commonly translated by "*of*," or by '*s*; as, *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or the master's learning.

The *dative* case denotes that with reference to which the subject (named by the nominative case) acts; or in

* A crescent (˘) placed over a vowel denotes that the syllable is *short*; a straight line (¯) denotes that it is *long*.

reference to which it possesses this or that quality: and in English it is commonly expressed by the sign "*to*" or "*for*," pointing out the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the thing spoken of tends; as, *do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master; *patriæ suæ idoneus*, useful to his country.

The *accusative* case expresses the object, whether person or thing, affected by the action spoken of; as, *amo magistrum*, I love the master; *condo domum*, I build a house.

The *vocative* case is used in addressing people or things; as, *O magister*, O master.

The *ablative* case serves to denote the person or thing from whom or from which anything is taken; and also many other relations of substantives, which are expressed in most other languages by prepositions, such as, "*in*," "*with*," "*from*," or "*by*." Also, the word "*than*" after an adjective of the comparative degree is often a sign of the ablative case; as, *cum magistro*, with the master; *in Italiâ*, in Italy; *vir fortior Cæsare*, a man braver than Cæsar.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

The GENDERS of nouns are three; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Some substantives are called *common*, being such as denote an occupation or quality common to both males and females, and admitting adjectives of either the masculine or feminine gender to be joined with them, according as the subject is male or female; as, *meus parens*, or *mea parens*, "my parent," according as the father or mother is spoken of.

Some are called *epicene*, being such as have only one grammatical gender, which comprehends both sexes; as, *hic passer*, this sparrow; *hæc aquila*, this eagle; without regard to the difference of sex.

Some are called *doubtful*, being such as are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, without regard to the actual sex of the animal spoken of; as, *hic anguis* or *hæc anguis*, this snake.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The First declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ*, and has the nominative case ending in *ă*, of either the masculine or feminine gender; as, *scrība*, a scribe; *via*, a way; or, (in the case of words derived from Greek, being mostly proper names) in *as* or *es* of the masculine, and in *ē* of the feminine gender. These last make the genitive singular to end in *ēs*.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	Mūs-a, *a song*,	N. Mūs-æ, *songs*,
G.	Mūs-æ, *of a song*,*	G. Mūs-ārum, *of songs*,
D.	Mūs-æ, *to a song*,	D. Mūs-is, *to songs*,
Acc.	Mūs-am, *a song*,	A. Mūs-as, *songs*,
V.	Mūs-a, *o song*,	V. Mūs-æ, *o songs*,
Abl.	Mūs-â, *from a song*.	A. Mūs-is, *from songs*.

N.	Ænēas,	Anchīses,	Pēnĕlŏpē,
G.	Ænēæ,	Anchīsæ,	Pēnĕlŏpēs,
D.	Ænēæ,	Anchīsæ,	Pēnĕlŏpæ,
Acc.	Ænēān,	Anchīsēn,	Pēnĕlŏpēn,
V.	Ænēā,	Anchīsā,†	Pēnĕlŏpē,
Abl.	Ænēâ.	Anchīsâ.	Pēnĕlŏpē.

One or two feminine substantives in *ă*, derived from masculines in *us*, make the dat. and abl. plural in *ābus* as well as in *is*; as, *filia*, a daughter, *filiabus* or *filiis*.

Also feminine proper names ending in *ă*, derived from the Greek, are used in Latin (especially by the poets) with either accusative *an* or *am*; and *an*, when used, follows the quantity of the Greek accusative, so that we find *Maiăn*, *Electrān*.

---

* The Epic Poets occasionally retain the older form, which used to end in *ai*; as, *aulai* in medio, for *Aulæ*. Virg.

† Hor. in his Satires uses this vocative case with *ă*.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*, and the nominative to end in *ĕr* and *ĭr* of the masculine gender only; as, *puer*, a boy; *măgister*, a teacher; *vir*, a man: in *us*, usually of the masculine gender; as, *dŏmĭnus*, a master; but sometimes of the feminine; as, *hŭmus*, the ground; or of the neuter, as, *vīrus*,* poison: in *um* of the neuter gender only; as, *regnum*, a kingdom: and (in the case of a few proper names derived from the Greek) in *ŏs* of the masculine or feminine gender, as, *Dēlŏs*; and in *ŏn* of the neuter, as, *Iliŏn*.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Puer, *a boy*,	N. Puĕri, *boys*,
G. Puĕri, *of a boy*,	G. Puĕrōrum, *of boys*,
D. Puĕro, *to a boy*,	D. Puĕris, *to boys*,
A. Puĕrum, *a boy*,	A. Puĕros, *boys*,
V. Puer, *o boy*,	V. Puĕri, *o boys*,
A. Puĕro, *by a boy*.	A. Puĕris, *by boys*.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Dŏmĭnus, *a master*,	N. Dŏmĭni, *masters*,
G. Dŏmĭni, *of a master*,	G. Dŏmĭnōrum, *of masters*,
D. Dŏmĭno, *to a master*,	D. Dŏmĭnis, *to masters*,
A. Dŏmĭnum, *a master*,	A. Dŏmĭnos, *masters*,
V. Dŏmĭne, *o master*,	V. Dŏmĭni, *o masters*,
A. Dŏmĭno, *by a master*.	A. Dŏmĭnis, *by masters*.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Măgister, *a teacher*,	N. Măgistri, *teachers*,
G. Măgistri, *of a teacher*,	G. Măgistrōrum, *of teachers*,
D. Măgistro, *to a teacher*,	D. Măgistris, *to teachers*,
A. Măgistrum, *a teacher*,	A. Măgistros, *teachers*,
V. Măgister, *o teacher*,	V. Măgistri, *o teachers*,
A. Măgistro, *by a teacher*.	A. Măgistris, *by teachers*.

* Nouns of the neuter gender of this declension ending in *us* make the accusative and vocative singular to end in *us*, and have no plural; except that Lucretius has *Pĕlăgē* as the accusative plural of *Pĕlăjus*.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Regn-um, *a kingdom,*	N. Regn-a, *kingdoms,*
G. Regn-i, *of a kingdom,*	G. Regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms*
D. Regn-o, *to a kingdom,*	D. Regn-is, *to kingdoms,*
A. Regn-um, *a kingdom,*	A. Regn-a, *kingdoms,*
V. Regn-um, *o kingdom,*	V. Regn-a, *o kingdoms,*
A. Regn-o, *from a kingdom.*	A. Regn-is, *from kingdoms.*

N. Dēlŏs,	Iliŏn,
G. Dēli,	Ilii,
D. Dēlo,	Ilio,
A. Dēlŏn,	Iliŏn,
V. Dēlĕ,	Iliŏn,
A. Dēlo.	Ilio.

The genitive case of words ending in *ius* or *ium* was originally *ī*, not *ii*, and *ii* is never used by Virgil or Horace (except in the case of the adjective *ēgrĕgii,)* though it occurs occasionally in Ovid.

The vocative of words ending in *us* terminates in *e*, except *Deus*, God, which makes *Deus* in the vocative; and words in *ius*, which make the vocative in *i*; as, *fīlius*, a son, *fīlī*. But proper names derived from the Greek ending in *ius* make the vocative in *e*; as, *Cynthius, Cynthie.*

All nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers. And all nouns whatever, except those of the first declension ending in *as* or *es*, and those of the second ending in *us* or *ŏs*, make the nominative and vocative alike in both numbers.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *is*, and in the nominative it ends in *e*, *o* (and in words derived from the Greek in *a*, *i*, and *y*,) *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, and *x*, of which those ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *t*, are of the neuter gender only (except *Prænestе*, which, as the name of a town, is used also in the feminine.) Those with the other terminations are of various genders, except that those ending in *o*, *ns*, and *x*, are never neuter.

Of nouns of this declension some are *parisyllabic* (that is, they do not increase in the genitive case,) as, *nūbes, nūbis;* some are *imparisyllabic* (that is, they do increase in the genitive case,) as, *lapis, lapĭdis.** Some

* In the case of imparisyllabic words, there is a great variety in the manner in which the increase in the genitive case is formed: the following are some of the principal varieties. Words ending in—

a make the gen. in ătis, *as* poēma, poemătis.
o ĭnis, *as* virgo, virgĭnis.
ōnis, *as* leo, leōnis.
ŏnis, *as* Măcĕdo, Măcĕdŏnis.
y yŏs, *as* Tiphys, Tiphyŏs.
c ctis, *as* lac, lactis.
l lis, *as* ănĭmal, ănĭmālis; sal, sālis; mel, mellis.
n an ānis, *as* Titān, Titānis.
n ēn ēnis, *as* Sirēn, Sirēnis.
n in īnis, *as* Delphīn, Delphīnis.
n ĕn ĭnis, *as* carmĕn, carmĭnis.
n ōn ōnis, *as* Mărăthon, Mărăthōnis.
n ōn ŏnis, *as* cănōn, cănŏnis.
n ōn ontis, *as* Xenophon, Xenophontis.
r by adding is, *as* calcar, calcāris.
jūbar, jubāris.
carcer, carcĕris.
ver, vēris.
hŏnor, hŏnōris.
æquor, æquŏris.
fur, fūris.
murmur, murmŭris; but far makes farris; ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris; Jūpĭter, Jŏvis; cor, cordis; rōbur, rōbŏris.
as in ātis, *as* pietās, pietātis:
but in words derived from the Greek—
in ădis, *as* lampăs, lampădis.
antis, *as* gĭgas, gigantis.
We find also mas, măris; vas, vāsis; vas, vădis; as, assis.
ĕs in ĭtis, *as* mīlĕs, mīlĭtis.
ĕs in ētis, *as* sĕgĕs, sĕgētis.
We find also quies, quiētis; pes, pĕdis; hæres, hærēdis; Cĕrĕs, Cĕrĕris.
is in ĕris, *as* cinis, cĭnĕris.
ĭdis, *as* lapis, lăpĭdis.
We find also līs, lītis; sanguis, sanguĭnis; glīs, glīris.
ns, *rs* by changing *s* into *tis*, *as* părens, părentis; ars, artis.
So also we find trabs, trăbis; urbs, urbis; hyems, hyĕmis; cœlebs, cœlĭbis; princeps, princĭpis; but frons (a leaf,) frondis; glans, glandis.

parisyllabic nouns ending in *is* make the accusative case singular to end in *im*,* as, *turris, turrim*; and these and some others make the ablative to end both in *i* and *e*, as, *puppis*, abl. *puppi* and *puppe* (one, *vis*, makes only *vi*.) All nouns of the neuter gender form their nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *a*; those which end in *al, ar* (except *far*,) and *e*, make them in *ia*. And such words, and most parisyllabic substantives of this declension, form their genitive case plural in *ium*.†

Words ending in
ōs make the gen. in ōris, *as* flōs, flōris.
ōtis, *as* dos, dōtis.
also os (a bone.) ossis.
oïs, *as* heros (borrowed from the Greek,) herois.
us, when neut. in ĕris, *as* ŏpus, ŏpĕris.
ŏris, *as* pĕcus, pĕcŏris.
when fem. in ūtis, *as* virtūs, virtūtis.
ūdis, *as* pĕcus, pĕcūdis.
We find also Vĕnus, Vĕnĕris; grus, gruis: and the masculine mus, mūris.
in cis, *as* pax, pācis.
fax, fācis.
vervex, vervēcis,
nex, nĕcis.
cornix, cornīcis.
călix, călīcis.
vox, vōcis.
Cappădox, Cappădŏcis.
lux, lūcis.
nux, nŭcis.
lynx, lyncis.

But *ex* makes also ĭcis, *as* lătex, lătĭcis; we find also rex, rĕgis; grex, grĕgis; rēmex, rēmĭgis; nix, nĭvis; nox, noctis; Phryx, Phrўgis.

* Some, being chiefly Greek proper names, make the accusative singular in *ĭn*, as *Păris, Părĭn*, and these make the vocative in ĭ, as *Părĭ*. Some imparisyllabic words also, derived from the Greek, being chiefly proper names, make the accusative singular to end in *ă*; and if they have a plural number, the plural nominative ends in *ĕs*, and the accusative in *ăs*, as *Pallăs*, the goddess, *Palladă*; *Pallās*, the man, *Pallanta*; *lampăs*, acc. sing. *lampăda*, nom. and voc. pl. *lampădĕs*, acc. *lampădăs*. These words also sometimes are used by the poets with the dative case plural in *ăsĭn*, as *Trōăs*, a Trojan woman, *Trōădă. Trōădĕs, Trōăsĭn, Trōădăs.*

† *Vātes, sĕnex, jŭvĕnis, ăpis, cănis, vŏlŭcris*, are exceptions to this rule, and form their genitive plural in *ium*, not in *ium*. Most nouns of one syllable make the genitive plural in *um*; those of two or more syllables ending in *ns* or *rs*, make it both in *ium* and *um*. the former being the most common form in prose.

Proper names ending in *as, antis,* make the vocative case singular to end in *ā,* as *Calchas, Calchantis,* voc. *Calchā;* and those in *es, is,* make it *ēs* and in *ē,* and make the accusative in *em* or in *ēn;* as, *Sophocles, Sophoclis,* accus. *Sophoclem* or *Sophoclen,* voc. *Sophocles* or *Sophoclē.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Nūbes, *a cloud,*	N. Nūbes, *clouds,*
G. Nūbis, *of a cloud,*	G. Nūbium, *of clouds,*
D. Nūbi, *to a cloud,*	D. Nūbĭbus, *to clouds,*
A. Nūbem, *a cloud,*	A. Nūbes, *clouds,*
V. Nūbes, *o cloud,*	V. Nūbes, *o clouds,*
A. Nūbe, *by a cloud.*	A. Nūbĭbus, *by clouds.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Lăpis, *a stone,*	N. Lăpĭdes, *stones,*
G. Lăpĭdis, *of a stone,*	G. Lăpĭdum, *of stones,*
D. Lăpĭdi, *to a stone,*	D. Lăpĭdĭbus, *to stones,*
A. Lăpĭdem, *a stone,*	A. Lăpĭdes, *stones,*
V. Lăpis, *o stone,*	V. Lăpĭdes, *o stones,*
A. Lăpĭde, *by a stone.*	A. Lăpĭdĭbus, *by stones.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ŏpus, *a work,*	N. ŏpĕra, *works,*
G. ŏpĕris, *of a work,*	G. ŏpĕrum, *of works,*
D. ŏpĕri, *to a work,*	D. ŏpĕrĭbus, *to works,*
A. ŏpus, *a work,*	A. ŏpĕra, *works,*
V. ŏpus, *o work,*	V. ŏpĕra, *o works,*
A. ŏpĕre, *by a work.*	A. ŏpĕrĭbus, *by works.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Măre, *a sea,*	N. Măria, *seas,*
G. Măris, *of a sea,*	G. Mărium, *of seas,*
D. Mări, *to a sea,*	D. Mărĭbus, *to seas,*
A. Măre, *a sea,*	A. Măria, *seas,*
V. Măre, *o sea,*	V. Măria, *o seas,*
A. Mări, or Măre, *by the sea.*	A. Mărĭbus, *by seas.*

Besides these words, there are some proper names derived from the Greek, which belong mainly to the second declension, but have some cases (especially in poetry) which belong to the third:

N. Orpheus,
G. Orphei, or Orpheŏs,
D. Orpheo, or Orphĕï. contr. Orphēi,
A. Orpheum, or Orphĕă, contr. Orphae,
V. Orpheu,
A. Orpheo.

Sappho is thus declined:

N. Sappho,
G. Sapphûs,
D. Sappho,
A. Sappho,
V. Sappho,
A. Sappho.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ûs*, and in the nominative ends in *us*, being of either the masculine or feminine gender; or in *u*, of the neuter gender.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Grăd-us, *a step*,	N. Grăd-us, *steps*,
G. Grăd-ûs, *of a step*,	G. Grăd-uum, *of steps*,
D. Grăd-ui, *to a step*,	D. Grăd-ĭbus, *to steps*,
A. Grăd-um, *a step*,	A. Grăd-us, *steps*,
V. Grăd-us, *o step*,	V. Grăd-us, *o steps*,
A. Grăd-u, *with a step*.	A. Grăd-ĭbus, *with steps*.

The dative in *ui* is sometimes contracted into *ŭ*, both in poetry and prose, as, *Parce metŭ*.—Virg.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Cornu, *a horn*,	N. Cornua, *horns*,
G. Cornûs, *of a horn*,*	G. Cornuum, *of horns*,
D. Cornui, *to a horn*,*	D. Cornĭbus, *to horns*,
A. Cornu, *a horn*,	A. Cornua, *horns*,
V. Cornu, *o horn*,	V. Cornua, *o horns*,
A. Cornu, *with a horn*.	A. Cornĭbus, *with horns*.

Dŏmus, a house, belongs partly to the fourth declension and partly to the second.

* But the genitive and dative cases singular of words in *u* are scarcely ever found.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Dŏmus, *a house,*	N. Dŏmus, *houses,*
G. Dŏmûs, *of a house,*	G. Dŏmuum *and* dŏmorum, *of houses,*
D. Dŏmui & dŏmo, *to a house.*	D. Dŏmĭbus, *to houses,*
A. Dŏmum, *a house,*	A. Dŏmos, *houses,*
V. Dŏmus, *o house,*	V. Dŏmus, *o houses,*
A. Dŏmo, *by a house.*	A. Dŏmĭbus, *by houses.*

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei,* and in the nominative ends in *es,* being always of the feminine gender, with the exception of *dies,* a day, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural; as,

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Făci-es, *a face,*	N. Făci-es, *faces,*
G. Făci-ēi, *of a face,*	G. Făci-ērum, *of faces,*
D. Făci-ēi, *to a face,*	D. Făci-ēbus, *to faces,*
A. Făci-em, *a face,*	A. Făci-es, *faces,*
V. Făci-es, *o face,*	V. Făci-es, *o faces,*
A. Făci-ē, *from a face.*	A. Făci-ēbus, *from faces.*

The termination of the genitive singular in *ei* is sometimes contracted in poetry into *é;* as, "Libra *diĕ* somnique pares ubi fecerit horas."—Virg.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are declined like substantives, and have either three terminations, masculine, feminine, and neuter; or two, the one masculine and feminine, and the other neuter; or one termination only, serving for the three genders. Most adjectives of three terminations are declined in the masculine and neuter genders, like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension; as, *bŏnus,* good; *tĕner,* tender; *āter,* black.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Bŏn-us,	bon-a,	bon-um,	Bŏn-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
G.	Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i,	Bon-órum,	bon-árum,	bon-órum,
D.	Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o,	Bon-is,		
A.	Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um,	Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
V.	Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um,	Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
A.	Bon-o,	bon-â,	bon-o.	A. Bon-is.		

Meus, mine, makes in the vocative case sing. mas. *meus,* and *mî,** not *meé!*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Tĕn-er,	tenĕ-ra,	tené-rum,	Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
G.	Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ri,	Tene-rórum,	tene-rárum,	
D.	Tene-ro,	tene-ræ,	tene-ro,	Tene-ris,	[tene-rórum,	
A.	Tene-rum,	-ram,	-rum,	Tene-ros,	tene-ras,	tene-ra,
V.	Ten-er,	tene-ra,	tene-rum,	Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
A.	Tené-ro,	tene-râ,	tene-ro.	A. Tene-ris.		

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Āter,	atra,	atrum,	Atri,	atræ,	atra,
G.	Atri,	atræ,	atri,	Atrorum,	atrarum,	atrorum,
D.	Atro,	atræ,	atro,	D. Atris,		
A.	Atrum,	atram,	atrum,	Atros,	atras,	atra,
V.	Ater,	atra,	atrum,	Atri,	atræ,	atra,
A.	Atro,	atrâ,	atro.	A. Atris.		

Some adjectives in *er,* however, are declined in all the three genders like substantives of the third declension; as, *ācer,* active.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Ācer,	acris,	acre,	Acres,	acres,	acria,
G.	Acris,			Acrium,		
D.	Acri,			Acrĭbus,		
A.	Acrem,	acrem,	acre,	Acres,	acres,	acria,
V.	Acer,	acris,	acre,	Acres,	acres,	acria,
A.	Acri.			A. Acrĭbus.		

* *Mî* in the inferior Authors is occasionally used for the vocative of any gender of either number.

Unus one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *ullus* any, *nullus* none, *alter** the other, *uter* whether of the two, make the genitive case singular in *īus*, and the dative in *ī*; as,†

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N
N.	Ūn-us,	un-a,	un-um,	N. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a,
G.	Un-īus,			G. Un-ōrum,	-ārum,	ōrum,
D.	Un-ī,			D. Un-is,		
A.	Un-um,	un-am,	un-um,	A. Ūn-os,	un-as,	un-a,
V.	Un-e,	un-a,	un-um,	V. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a,
A.	Un-o,	un-ā,	un-o.	A. Un-is.		

Note. *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number; as, *unæ literæ*, a letter; *una mœnia*, a wall.

Adjectives of two terminations are declined like substantives of the third declension; as, *tristis* sad, *melior* better.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
N.	Trist-is,	trist-e,	N. Trist-es,	trist-ia,
G.	Trist-is,		G. Trist-ium,	
D.	Trist-i,		D. Trist-ĭbus,	
A.	Trist-em,	trist-e,	A. Trist-es,	trist-ia,
V.	Trist-is,	trist-e,	V. Trist-es,	trist-ia,
A.	Trist-i, *very rarely*	tristē.‡	A. Trist-ĭbus.	

* *Alterœ* is also used as the dat. sing. fem. of *alter*, by Corn. Nepos.

† So also words compounded of *uter*, as *neuter*, neither; *uterque*, each, fem. *utraque*, neut. *utrumque*. *Alius*, another, also makes *ălīus* in the genitive case, *alīi* dat.; it also makes *ăliud*, nom. and acc. sing. neut.

‡ There are in poetry a few instances of adjectives in *is* making the ablative in *e*, but they are very rare; and in adjectives of one termination, the ablative usually ends in *i*, except in words ending in *x*, increasing short, or in *ens* or *ans*, whose ablative most commonly ends in *e*, though *i* also is found, and except *pauper*, *senex*, *juvenis*, and *princeps*, and adjectives ending in *ĕs*, as *sŭperstĕs*, which make the ablative in *e* only.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
	M.F. N.		M.F. N.
N.	Mĕli-or, mĕli-us,	N.	Mĕli-ōres, meli-ōra,
G.	Mĕli-ōris,	G.	Mĕli-ōrum,
D.	Mĕli-ōri,	D.	Mĕli-ōribus,
A.	Mĕli-ōrem, mĕli-us,	A.	Mĕli-ōres, mĕli-ōra,
V.	Mĕli-or, mĕli-us,	V.	Mĕli-ōres, mĕli-ōra,
A.	Mĕli-ōre, *or* mĕli-ōri.	A.	Mĕli-ōribus.

Adjectives of one termination, which however have two in acc. sing. and in nom. acc. and voc. pl. are also declined like substantives of the third declension, as *fēlix* happy, *ingens* vast.—And some have no neuter gender at all, except in particular cases, of which the most common are the dat. and abl. sing. and have never any distinctive neuter termination; as, *mĕmor* mindful, *sŭperstĕs* surviving.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
	M.F. N.		M.F. N.
N.	Fēl-ix,	N.	Fēlī-ces, fēlī-cia,
G.	Fēlī-cis,	G.	Fēlī-cium,
D.	Fēlī-ci,	D.	Fēlī-cibus,
A.	Fēlī-cem, fēl-ix,	A.	Fēlī-ces, fēlī-cia,
V.	Fēl-ix,	V.	Fēlī-ces, fēlī-cia,
A.	Fēlī-ci, *or* feli-ce.	A.	Fēlī-cibus.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
	M.F. N.		M.F. N.
N.	Ingens,	N.	Ingentes, ingentia,
G.	Ingentis,	G.	Ingentium,
D.	Ingenti,	D.	Ingentibus,
A.	Ingentem, ingens,	A.	Ingentes, ingentia,
V.	Ingens,	V.	Ingentes, ingentia,
A.	Ingenti, *or* ingente.	A.	Ingentibus.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N.	Mĕmor,	N.	Mĕmŏres,
G.	Mĕmŏris,	G.	Mĕmŏrum,
D.	Mĕmŏri,	D.	Mĕmŏribus,
A.	Mĕmŏrem,	A.	Mĕmŏres,
V.	Mĕmor,	V.	Mĕmŏres,
A.	Mĕmŏre, *or* mĕmŏri.	A.	Mĕmŏribus.

Ambo both, and *duo* two, are nouns adjective, and are thus declined, in the plural number only:

N. Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	*both.*
G. Amb-ōrum,	amb-ārum,	amb-ōrum,	*of both.*
D. Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	*to both.*
A. Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	*both.*
V. Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	*both.*
A. Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	*with both.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of signification, or comparison; the positive, the comparative, and the superlative:

I. The positive denotes the quality of a thing absolutely; as, *doctus* learned, *brĕvis* short.

II. The comparative increases, or lessens the quality; as, *doctior* more learned, *brĕvior* shorter, or more short:

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* in the neuter; as, of

Doctus, gen. *docti*, is formed *doctior*, more learned:

of

Brĕvis, dat. *brĕvi*, is formed *brĕvior*, shorter.

III. The superlative increases, or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree; as, *doctissimus* most learned, or very learned; *brevissimus* shortest, most short, or very short:

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssĭmus*; as, of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissĭmus*, most learned.

Dat. *brĕvi*, is formed *brĕvissĭmus*, shortest.

Note. Many Adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparisons irregularly; as,

Bŏnus,	good;	*mĕlior*,	better;	*optĭmus*,	best.
Malus,	bad;	*pējor*,	worse;	*pessĭmus*,	worst.
Magnus,	great;	*mājor*,	greater;	*maxĭmus*,	greatest.
Parvus,	little;	*mĭnor*,	less;	*mĭnĭmus*,	least.
Multus,	much;	*plus*,	more;	*plūrĭmus*,	most.

Nēquam, wicked; *nēquior*, more wicked; *nēquissĭmus*, most wicked.

Dīves, rich; *dīvĭtior*, or *dītior*, more rich; *dīvĭtissĭmus*, or *dītissĭmus*, most rich.

Extĕrus, outward; *extĕrior*, more outward; *extrēmus*, and *extĭmus*, uttermost, or most outward.

Infĕrus, low; *infĕrior*, lower, or more low; *infĭmus*, and *īmus*, lowest, or most low.

Sŭpĕrus, high; *sŭpĕrior*, higher, or more high; *suprēmus*, or *summus*, highest, or most high.

Postĕrus, subsequent; *postĕriar*, later; *postrēmus*, last.

Dexter, on the right hand; *dextĕrior*, *dextĭmus*, both in nearly the same sense as the positive.

Jŭvĕnis, young; *jūnior*, younger, or more young.

Sĕnex, old; *sĕnior*, older, or more old.

Adjectives in *-dĭcus*, *-fĭcus*, *-vŏlus*, derived from the verbs *dico*, *facio*, *volo*, form their comparisons in *-entior* and *-entissimus*, as if from the present participle of these verbs; as,

Maledĭcus, inclined to speak ill, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*.
Benefĭcus, inclined to do good, *beneficentior*, *beneficentissimus*.
Benevolus, wishing well, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

Some adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees are formed from prepositions; as, from

Intra, within; *intĕrior*, inner; *intĭmus*, inmost.
Ultra, beyond; *ultĕrior*, further; *ultĭmus*, furthest, last.
Citra, on this side; *cĭtĕrior*, nearer; *cĭtĭmus*, nearest.
Prope, near; *prŏpior*, nearer; *proxĭmus*, nearest.
Præ, before; *prĭor*, before; *prīmus*, first.

And some have no positive at all to which we can refer them; as,

dētĕrior,	worse;	*dēterrimus*,	worst.
ōcyor,	swifter;	*ōcyssimus*,	swiftest.
pŏtior,	more desirable;	*pŏtissimus*,	most desirable.

Adjectives ending in *er* form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rĭmus*; as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rĭmus* fairest, or, most fair.

So too *vĕtus*, making in the gen. *vĕtĕris*, though it has no comparative, makes in the superlative *vĕterrĭmus*.

The following adjectives in *ĭlis* change *is* into *ĭmus*:

Ăgĭl-is,	nimble;	*ăgil-ĭmus,*	nimblest,	or, most nimble.
Făcĭl-is,	easy;	*făcil-ĭmus,*	easiest,	or, most easy.
Grăcĭl-is,	slender;	*grăcil-ĭmus,*	slenderest,	or, most slender.
Hŭmĭl-is,	low;	*hŭmil-ĭmus,*	lowest,	or, most low.
Sĭmĭl-is,	like;	*sĭmil-ĭmus,*	likest,	or, most like.

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is usually made by *măgis* more, and *maxĭmè* most; as,

Pius, godly; *măgis pius,* more godly; *maxĭmè pius,* most godly.*

OF A PRONOUN.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a substantive, and is either itself a substantive, and called a *personal pronoun;* or an adjective, being either a *demonstrative,* or *relative,* or *interrogative* pronoun. There are also *possessive* pronouns, which are adjectives derived from the genitive cases of the personal pronouns.

The pronouns are:

The personal pronouns:

Egŏ, I,
tu, you,
sui, of himself,

Possessive pronouns.

meus, mine,
tuus, your,
suus, his own,
noster, ours,
vester, yours, of *ye,*

Demonstrative pronouns:

hic, this,
is, he,
ille, he,
ipse, oneself,
idem, (which is a compound of *is*) the same,

qui, who, the relative pronoun, and its compounds *quicunque, quisquis,* etc.
qui or *quis,* who? the interrogative pronoun.

The syllable *met,* giving additional emphasis to the pronoun, is often added to *ĕgŏ,* in all cases except the genitive, and to some of the cases of *tu* and of *sui;* but to the nominative of *tu, met* is not added, but *te,* as nom. *tūtĕ,* acc. *tūtĕmet.* The accusative and ablative cases of *sui* admit of a reduplication, as *sēsē.*

* Juvenal uses *egregiùs* as the comparative of the adverb *agregiè,* and *piissimus* occurs in Seneca; but these examples are not to be imitated.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ego, tu, sui, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined:

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. Ego,	*I,*	N. Nos,	*we,*
G. Mei,	*of me,*	G. Nostr-ûm, *vel* -i,	*of us,*
D. Mihi,*	*to me,*	D. Nōbis,	*to us,*
A. Me,	*me,*	A. Nos,	*us,*
V. —		V. —	
A. Me,	*from,* or, *by me.*	A. Nōbis,	*from,* or, *by us.*

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. Tu,	*thou,* or, *you,*	N. Vos,	*ye,* or, *you,* [*you,*
G. Tui,	*of thee,* or, *you,*	G. Vestr-ûm, *vel* -i,	*of ye,* or,
D. Tibi,	*to thee,* or, *you,*	D. Vōbis,	*to ye,* or, *you,*
A. Te,	*thee,* or, *you,*	A. Vos,	*ye,* or, *you,*
V. Tu,	*o thou,* or, *you,*	V. Vos,	*o ye,*
A. Te,	*with thee,* or, *you.*	A. Vōbis,	*with ye,* or, *you.*

Sui,† of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:

Singular and *Plural.*

G. Sui,	*of himself,*	*herself, themselves, &c.*
D. Sibi,	*to himself,*	
A. Se,	*himself,*	
A. Se,	*by himself,*	

Singular.				*Plural.*			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Hic,‡	hæc,	hoc,	N. Hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	Hujus,			G. Hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D.	Huic,			D. His,		
A.	Hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. Hos,	has,	hæc,
V.	—			V. —		
A.	Hôc,	hâc,	hôc.	A. His.		

* In poetry often contracted into *mi.*

† *Sui* and its possessive *suus* are called *reflective* pronouns, because they refer to that person or thing which is the principal word in the sentence.

‡ To *hic* is often added *ce,* giving additional emphasis in all cases and genders; and in interrogative sentences, sometimes *cine* is added; as, *hujusce, hunccine, hosce,* etc.

Ille he, fem. *illa* she, neut. *illud* that, is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	N.	F.	N.
N.	Ille,	ill-a,	ill-ud,	Ill-i,	ill-æ,	ill-a,
G.	Ill-ius,			Ill-ōrum,	ill-ārum,	ill-ōrum,
D.	Ill-i,			Ill-is,		
A.	Ill-um,	ill-am,	ill-ud,	Ill-os,	ill-as,	ill-a,
V.	—			—		
A.	Ill-o,	ill-â,	ill-o.	Ill-is.		

In like manner is also declined *iste* that, and *ipse* he himself; except that this last makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative cases singular of the neuter gender.

Is, ea, id, he, she, *or* that, is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Is,	ea,	id,	Ii,	eæ,	ea,
G.	Ejus,			Eórum,	eárum,	eórum,
D.	Ei,			Iis, *vel,*	eis,	
A.	Eum,	eam,	id,	Eos,	eas,	ea,
V.	—			—		
A.	Eo,	eâ,	eo.	Iis, *vel,*	eis.	

In like manner also is declined its compound, *idem* the same; as, nom. *īdem, eădem, ĭdem;* gen. *ejusdem,* &c.

The relative *qui,* who, is thus declined:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Qui,	quæ,	quod,	Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	Cujus,			Quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	Cui,			Quĭbus,*		
A.	Quem,	quam,	quod,	Quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	—			—		
A.	Quo,	quâ,	quo.	Quĭbus.		

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam,* a certain one; *quivis, quilĭbet,* any one; *quicunque,* whosoever, &c. &c.

* *Quĭbus* is often contracted into *queis,* or *quis,* in poetry, and in some (but not in the purest) prose writers.

The *indefinite* pronoun *quis*, any one, (not found except after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto,* or *quum,*) is declined like *qui,* except that in the nom. sing. fem. and also in the nom. and acc. pl. neut. it makes both *quæ* and (more usually) *quă;* and in the nom. and acc. neut. sing. it makes *quid.*

The *interrogative* pronoun, when joined with a substantive, is *qui?** when standing without a substantive, the nom. sing. masc. is *quis?* and in the nom. and acc. sing. neut. *quid?*

Quisquis, whosoever, is confined to the following cases:

Nom.	Quisquis, ———	quidquid, *or* quicquid,
Acc.	——— ———	quidquid, *or* quicquid,
Abl.	M. Quoquo,	N. quoquo.

OF A VERB.

A VERB is that part of speech by which it is declared that the subject of a sentence *does* or *suffers* something.

Verbs have two voices; the *active,* ending in *o;* the *passive,* ending in *or.*

Of verbs ending in *o* some are *transitive,* that is to say, in them the action passes on to a noun following; as, *amo te,* "I love you." And these verbs have a passive voice, which is made by changing *o* into *or;* as, *amor,* "I am loved."

Some are *intransitive,* that is to say, the action expressed by them does not pass on to any noun following, but is complete in itself; as, *curro,* "I run:" and these verbs have no passive voice.†

Three verbs, *fĭo,* "I become;" *vāpŭlo,* "I am beaten;" *vēneo,* "I am sold," have a passive signification, but an active form (except that *fĭo* makes *factus sum* in the perfect;) and are called *neutral passives.*

---

* There are a few instances of *quis* also being used with a substantive, but, except in poetry, it is seldom done, except to avoid an open vowel.

† But, from these verbs, impersonal verbs are often formed of the third singular passive; as, *vīvĭtur,* "it is lived by men," that is to say, "men live, one lives," &c.; *ĭtur,* "men go, one goes," &c.; *ventum est,* "I, or you, or he came," &c.

Four verbs, *audeo*, "I dare;" *fīdo*, "I trust;" *gaudeo*, "I am glad;" and *sŏleo*, "I am accustomed," have the passive form with an active signification in the participle of the perfect tense, and in the tenses formed from it; as, *ausŭs sum*, &c. and these are called *neuter passives*.

Of verbs ending in *or* some are *passive*, as has been said above, and some are *deponent* verbs, being of a passive form (with the addition of gerunds and supines,) but of an active signification; some being *transitive;* as, *vĕnĕror Deum*, "I worship God;" and some *intransitive;* as, *mŏrior*, "I die."

Some verbs are used only in the third person singular, having no nominative case; as, *tŏnat*, "it thunders;" *ŏportet me*, "it behoves me;" and these are called verbs *impersonal*.

OF MOODS.

There are four moods, the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The *indicative* mood either declares a thing positively; as, *ego amo*, "I do love;" or asks a question; as, *amas tu*, "dost thou love?"

The *imperative* mood expresses a command, a request, a wish, or an exhortation; as, *vĕni huc*, "come hither;" *parce mihi*, "spare me." It is also known by the sign *let;* as, *īto*, "let him go."*

The *subjunctive* or *potential* mood speaks of the subject as it is conceived in the mind; and is called *subjunctive*, when it is subjoined to another word or clause going before it; as, *nescio qualis sit*, "I know not what sort of man he is." It is called *potential*, when it signifies *power, duty, likelihood, inclination*, or *wish;* and in the second and third persons of the present and perfect it is sometimes used nearly in the sense of the impera-

* In grammars the imperative is usually given as consisting but of one tense; but the forms in *to* (active) and in *tor* (passive) have a more future sense than the other forms.

tive; as, *sis bŏnus,* "may you be propitious;" *ămet,* "let him love."

The *infinitive* mood has neither number, person, or nominative case before it; and is known commonly by the sign *to;* as, *amāre,* "to love." It is also often used as a nominative or accusative case neuter; as, *errāre humānum est,* "to err is human."

OF TENSES.

Verbs have six tenses or times, expressing the time of an action; the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first future, and second future, or future perfect.

The *present* tense speaks of a thing now existing, or now doing; as, *ămo,* "I love;" *lŏquor,* "I am speaking;" *sum,* "I am."

The *imperfect* tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but was not terminated, at some particular past time; as, *ămābam,* "I was loving." And sometimes it expresses a habit; as, *dīcēbam,* "I used to say." And is formed by changing—

In the first conjugation	*o* into *-ābam,*
In the second . .	*o* into *-bam,*
In the third and fourth	*o* into *-ēbam.**

The *perfect* tense speaks of an action terminated; as, *ămāvi,* "I loved," or "have loved," and is formed as will be shewn in the *As in præsenti.*

The *pluperfect* speaks of a thing done at some time past, and then ended; as, *ămāvĕram,* "I had loved;" and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ĕram.*

The *first future* tense speaks of a thing to be done hereafter; as, *ămābo,* "I shall love;" and is formed from the present by changing—

In the first conjugation	*o* into *ābo,*
In the second . .	*o* into *bo,*
In the third and fourth	*o* into *am.*

* The Poets often make the imperfect of the fourth conjugation in *-ibam,* instead of *-iebam;* as, "*Lenibat* dictis animum." Virg.

The *second future*, or *future perfect*, speaks of a thing which will have been done when something else has been done; as, *ămāvĕro*, "I shall have loved;" and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ĕro*.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three *gerunds*, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which supply the oblique cases of the infinitive present active; as, *ămandi*, "of loving;" *ămandum*, "loving;" *ămando*, "by loving," &c.; and they are formed from the present by changing—

In the first conjugation	*o* into *andi*,
In the second . .	*eo* into *endi*,
In the third and fourth	*o* into *endi*.

They have two *supines*, which are also used to supply cases for the infinitive and are formed, as will be taught in the *As in præsenti*.

The supine in *um* is used only with verbs expressing or implying a motion to a place; as, *eo dormītum*, "I go to sleep."

The supine in *u* has a passive sense, and is used only after adjectives, or after one or two substantives used as adjectives; as, *turpe factu*, "base to be done;" *nĕfas dictu*, "wicked to be said." But there are many verbs which have no supine.

PARTICIPLES.

THERE are four participles; two active, and two passive:—

The participle of the present active, which signifies a present action, and ends in *ans* in the first conjugation, and in *ens* in the others; as, *ămans*, "loving;" *mŏnens*, "warning."

The participle future active ending in *ūrus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing anything; as, *ămātūrus*, "about to love," or "likely to love."

The participle perfect passive, which signifies what is actually done and completed; as, *ămātus,* "loved;" *mŏnĭtus,* "having been warned." But in deponent verbs this participle has commonly an active signification; as, *lŏcūtus hæc,* "having spoken these things."

Another participle passive, called also the *gerundive,* which denotes that what is spoken of must happen, ought to happen, or (sometimes) is actually happening, with respect to a person or thing; as, *ămandus,* "who must, or ought to be loved;" *in ĕpistolâ scribendâ,* "in writing the letter."

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like nouns; and three persons in each number.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
1. Ego amo,	*I love.*	Nos amāmus,	*We love.*
2. Tu amas,	*you love.*	Vos amātis,	*ye love.*
3. Ille amat,	*he loves.*	Illi amant,	*they love.*

All nouns, except *ego* and *tu,* are of the third person.

OF THE VERB *Esse,* to be.

Before other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, *to be.*

Sum, es, fui, esse, fŭtūrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Sum,	*I am.*	Plur. Sŭmus,	*We are.*
	Ĕs,	*you are.*	Estis,	*ye are.*
	Est,	*he is.*	Sunt,	*they are.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing.	Ĕram,	*I was.*	Plur. Ĕrāmus,	*We were.*
	Ĕras,	*you were.*	Ĕrātis,	*ye were.*
	Ĕrat,	*he was.*	Ĕrant,	*they were.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Fui,	*I have been.*
	Fuisti,	*you have been.*
	Fuit,	*he has been.*
Plur.	Fuĭmus,	*We have been.*
	Fuistis,	*ye have been.*
	Fuērunt, *vel* fuēre,	*they have been.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Fuĕram,	*I had been.*
	Fuĕras,	*you had been.*
	Fuĕrat,	*he had been.*
Plur.	Fuĕrāmus,	*We had been.*
	Fuĕrātis,	*ye had been.*
	Fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will.*

Sing.	Ĕro,	*I shall be.*
	Ĕris,	*you will be.*
	Ĕrit,	*he will be.*
Plur.	Ĕrĭmus,	*We shall be.*
	Ĕrĭtis,	*ye will be.*
	Ĕrunt,	*they will be.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Fuĕro,	*I shall have been.*
	Fuĕris,	*you will have been.*
	Fuĕrit,	*he will have been.*
Plur.	Fuĕrīmus,	*We shall have been.*
	Fuĕrītis,	*ye will have been.*
	Fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Es, esto,	*Be thou.*
	Esto,	*be he,* or, *let him be.*
Plur.	Este, estōte,	*Be ye.*
	Sunto,	*be they,* or, *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing.	Sim,	*I may be.*	Plur. Sīmus,	*We may be.*
	Sis,	*you may be.*	Sītis,	*ye may be.*
	Sit,	*he may be.*	Sint,	*they may be.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might,* &c.

Sing.	Essem, *vel,* fŏrem,	*I might be.*
	Esses, *vel,* fŏres,	*you might be.*
	Esset, *vel,* fŏret,	*he might be.*
Plur.	Essēmus, *vel,* fŏrēmus,	*We might be.*
	Essētis, *vel,* fŏrētis,	*ye might be.*
	Essent, *vel,* fŏrent,	*they might be.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have,* &c.

Sing.	Fuĕrim,	*I may have been.*
	Fuĕris,	*you may have been.*
	Fuĕrit,	*he may have been.*
Plur.	Fuĕrĭmus,	*We may have been.*
	Fuĕrĭtis,	*ye may have been.*
	Fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, would have,* &c.

Sing.	Fuissem,	*I might,* or, *would have been.*
	Fuisses,	*you might,* or, *would have been.*
	Fuisset,	*he might,* or, *would have been.*
Plur.	Fuissēmus,	*We might,* or, *would have been.*
	Fuissētis,	*ye might,* or, *would have been.*
	Fuissent,	*they might,* or, *would have been.*

5. Future Tense.—*may be about,* &c.

Sing.	Fŭtūrus sim,*	*I may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūrus sis,	*you may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūrus sit,	*he may be about to be*
Plur.	Fŭtūri sīmus,	*We may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūri sītis,	*ye may be about to be.*
	Fŭtūri sint,	*they may be about to be.*

* *Futūrus,* being in reality a participle, agrees with its substantive

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense,

Esse, *to be.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense,

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future Tense,

Fŏre, *vel,* Fŭtūrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle future,*

Fŭtūrus, *about to be.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

Verbs have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation has *ā* in the penultima (or last syllable but one) of the infinitive mood active; as, *ămo, ămāre.*†

The second has *ē;* as, *mŏnĕo, mŏnēre.*

The third has *ĕ;* as, *rĕgo, rĕgĕre.*

The fourth has *ī;* as, *audĭo, audīre.*

Verbs Active in *O* are declined after these examples.

1. Am-o, am-as, am-āvi, am-āre; aman-di, aman-do, aman-dum; amāt-um, amāt-u; am-ans, amātu-rus: *to love.*

---

in gender and number; so that in the singular it may be either *futurus, futura,* or *futurum;* in the plural, *futuri,* -*æ,* or -*a.*

* Some compounds of *sum* have also a present participle; as, *absum,* to be absent, part. *absens,* absent, or being absent.

† Except *do,* "to give;" which makes *dăre, dătum.*

2. Mŏn-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ēre; monen-di, moneu-do, monen-dum; monĭt-um, monĭt-u; mon-ens, monĭtū-rus: *to advise.*

3. Rĕg-o,* reg-is, rex-i, reg-ĕre; regen-di, regen-do, regen-dum; rect-um, rect-u; reg-ens, rectu-rus: *to rule.*

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-īvi, aud-īre; audien-di, audien-do, audien-dum; audīt-um, audīt-u; audi-ens, auditu-rus: *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Ăm-o,	*I love, am loving,* or, *do love.*
	ăm-as,	*you love, are loving,* or, *do love.*
	ăm-at,	*he loves, is loving,* or, *does love.*
Plur.	Ăm-āmus,	*We love, are loving,* or, *do love.*
	ăm-ātis,	*ye love, are loving,* or, *do love.*
	ăm-ant,	*they love, are loving,* or, *do love.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Am-ābam,	*I did love,* or, *was loving.*
	am-ābas,	*you did love,* or, *were loving.*
	am-ābat,	*he did love,* or, *was loving.*
Plur.	Am-ābāmus,	*We did love,* or, *were loving.*
	am-ābātis,	*ye did love,* or, *were loving.*
	am-ābant,	*they did love,* or, *were loving.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Ămāv-i,	*I loved,* or, *have loved.*
	amāv-isti,	*you loved,* or, *have loved.*
	amāv-it,	*he loved,* or, *has loved.*
Plur.	Amāv-ĭmus,	*We loved,* or, *have loved.*
	amāv-istis,	*ye loved,* or, *have loved.*
	amāv-ērunt, *vel*-ēre,	*they loved,* or, *have loved.*

* The following is the way in which a Verb of the third Conjugation ending in *-io* is declined:—Fŭg-io, fug-is, fūg-i, fug-ĕrĕ; fugien-di, fugien-do, fugien-dum; fugĭt-um, fugit-u; fugi-ens, fugitu-rus.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Ămāv-ĕram,	*I had loved.*
	amāv-ĕras,	*you had loved.*
	amāv-ĕrat,	*he had loved.*
Plur.	Amāv-ĕrāmus,	*We had loved.*
	amāv-ĕrātis,	*ye had loved.*
	amāv-ĕrant,	*they had loved.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will.*

Sing.	Ăm-ābo,	*I shall love.*
	am-ābis,	*you will love.*
	am-ābit,	*he will love.*
Plur.	Am-ābĭmus,	*We shall love.*
	am-ābĭtis,	*ye will love.*
	am-ābunt,	*they will love.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing.	Ămāv-ĕro,	*I shall have loved.*
	amāv-ĕris,	*you will have loved.*
	amāv-ĕrit,	*he will have loved.*
Plur.	Amāv-ĕrĭmus,	*We shall have loved.*
	amāv-ĕrĭtis,	*ye will have loved.*
	amāv-ĕrint,	*they will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Ăm-a, ăm-āto,	*Love thou.*
	am-āto,	*let him love.*
Plur.	Am-āte, am-ātōte,	*Love ye.*
	am-anto,	*let them love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing.	Ăm-em,	*I may love.*
	am-es,	*you may love.*
	am-et,	*he may love.*
Plur.	Am-ēmus,	*We may love.*
	am-ētis,	*ye may love.*
	am-ent,	*they may love.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should, would.*

Sing.	Ăm-ārem,	*I might love.*
	am-āres,	*you might love.*
	am-āret,	*he might love.*
Plur.	Am-ārēmus,	*We might love.*
	am-ārētis,	*ye might love.*
	am-ārent,	*they might love.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing.	Ămāv-ĕrim,	*I may have loved.*
	amāv-ĕris,	*you may have loved.*
	amāv-ĕrit,	*he may have loved.*
Plur.	Amāv-ĕrĭmus,	*We may have loved.*
	amāv-ĕrĭtis,	*ye may have loved.*
	amāv-ĕrint,	*they may have loved.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

Sing.	Ămāv-issem,	*I would have loved.*
	amāv-isses,	*you would have loved.*
	amāv-isset,	*he would have loved.*
Plur.	Amāv-issēmus,	*We would have loved.*
	amāv-issētis,	*ye would have loved.*
	amāv-issent,	*they would have loved.*

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing.	Ămātū-rus sim,	*I may be about to love.*
	amatu-rus sis,	*you may be about to love.*
	amatu-rus sit,	*he may be about to love.*
Plur.	Amatu-ri simus,	*We may be about to love.*
	amatu-ri sitis,	*ye may be about to love.*
	amatu-ri sint,	*they may be about to love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Ămā-re, *to love.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Ămāv-isse, *to have loved.*

Future Tense.

Ămātū-rum esse, *or,* fŏre, *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Ăman-di,	*of loving.*
Aman-do,	*in loving.*
Aman-dum,	*to love.*

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Ămāt-um, *to love.*	Ămāt-u, *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future,
Am-ans, *loving.*	Ămātū-rus, *about to love.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense. —*do, am.*

Sing.	Mŏn-eo,	*I advise, am advising,* or, *do advise.*
	mŏn-es,	*you advise, are advising* or, *do advise.*
	mŏn-et,	*he advises, is advising,* or, *does advise.*
Plur.	Mŏn-ēmus,	*We advise, are advising,* or, *do advise.*
	mŏn-ētis,	*ye advise, are advising,* or, *do advise.*
	mŏn-ent,	*they advise, are advising,* or, *do advise.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Mŏn-ēbam,	*I did advise,* or, *was advising.*
	mŏn-ēbas,	*you did advise,* or, *were advising.*
	mŏn-ēbat,	*he did advise,* or, *was advising.*
Plur.	Mŏn-ēbāmus,	*We did advise,* or, *were advising.*
	mŏn-ēbātis,	*ye did advise,* or, *were advising.*
	mŏn-ēbant,	*they did advise,* or, *were advising.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Mŏnu-i,	*I advised,* or, *have advised.*
	mŏnu-isti,	*you advised,* or, *have advised.*
	mŏnu-it,	*he advised,* or, *has advised.*
Plur.	Mŏnu-ĭmus,	*We advised,* or, *have advised.*
	mŏnu-istis,	*ye advised,* or, *have advised.*
	mŏnu-ērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they advised,* or, *have advised.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Mŏnu-ĕram,	*I had advised.*
	mŏnu-ĕras,	*you had advised.*
	mŏnu-ĕrat,	*he had advised.*
Plur.	Mŏnu-ĕrāmus,	*We had advised.*
	mŏnu-ĕrātis,	*ye had advised.*
	mŏnu-ĕrant,	*they had advised.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will.*

Sing.	Mŏnē-bo,	*I shall advise.*
	mŏnē-bis,	*you will advise.*
	mŏnē-bit,	*he will advise.*
Plur.	Mŏnē-bĭmus,	*We shall,* or, *will advise.*
	mŏnē-bĭtis,	*ye will advise.*
	mŏnē-bunt,	*they will advise.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing.	Monu-ĕro,	*I shall have advised.*
	monu-ĕris,	*you will have advised.*
	monu-ĕrit,	*he will have advised.*
Plur.	Monu-ĕrĭmus,	*We shall have advised.*
	monu-ĕrĭtis,	*ye will have advised.*
	monu-ĕrint,	*they will have advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Mŏn-e, mon-ēto,	*Advise thou.*
	mon-ēto,	*let him advise.*
Plur.	Mon-ēte, mon-ētōte,	*Advise ye.*
	mon-ento,	*let them advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing.	Mone-am,	*I may advise.*
	mone-as,	*you may advise.*
	mone-at,	*he may advise.*
Plur.	Mone-āmus,	*We may advise.*
	mone-ātis,	*ye may advise.*
	mone-ant,	*they may advise.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, would.*

Sing.	Monē-rem,	*I might advise.*
	monē-res,	*you might advise.*
	monē-ret,	*he might advise.*
Plur.	Monē-rēmus,	*We might advise.*
	monē-rētis,	*ye might advise.*
	monē-rent,	*they might advise.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing.	Monu-ĕrim,	*I may have advised.*
	monu-ĕris,	*you may have advised.*
	monu-ĕrit,	*he may have advised.*
Plur.	Monu-ĕrĭmus,	*We may have advised.*
	monu-ĕrĭtis,	*ye may have advised.*
	monu-ĕrint,	*they may have advised.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

Sing.	Monu-issem,	*I would have advised.*
	monu-isses,	*you would have advised.*
	monu-isset,	*he would have advised.*
Plur.	Monu-issēmus,	*We would have advised.*
	monu-issētis,	*ye would have advised.*
	monu-issent,	*they would have advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing.	Mŏnĭtū-rus sim,	*I may be about to advise.*
	monitu-rus sis,	*you may be about to advise.*
	monitu-rus sit,	*he may be about to advise.*
Plur.	Mŏnĭtū-ri sīmus,	*We may be about to advise.*
	monitu-ri sītis,	*ye may be about to advise.*
	monitu-ri sint,	*they may be about to advise.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Monu-isse, *to have advised.*

Future Tense.

Monĭtū-rum esse, *or* fŏre, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Monen-di,	*of advising.*
monen-do,	*in advising.*
monen-dum,	*to advise.*

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Monĭt-um, *to advise.*	Monĭt-u, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future.
Mon-ens, *advising.*	Monĭtū-rus, *about to advise.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕgo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Rĕg-o,	*I rule, am ruling,* or, *do rule.*
rĕg-is,	*you rule, are ruling,* or, *do rule.*
rĕg-it,	*he rules, is ruling,* or, *does rule.*
Plur. Rĕg-ĭmus,	*We rule, are ruling,* or, *do rule.*
rĕg-ītis,	*ye rule, are ruling,* or, *do rule.*
rĕg-unt,	*they rule, are ruling,* or, *do rule.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Rĕgē-bam,	*I did rule,* or, *was ruling.*
	rĕgē-bas,	*you did rule,* or, *were ruling.*
	rĕgē-bat,	*he did rule,* or, *was ruling.*
Plur.	Rĕgē-bāmus,	*We did rule,* or, *were ruling.*
	rĕgē-bātis,	*ye did rule,* or, *were ruling,*
	rĕgē-bant,	*they did rule,* or, *were ruling.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Rex-i,	*I ruled,* or, *have ruled.*
	rex-isti,	*you ruled,* or, *have ruled.*
	rex-it,	*he ruled,* or, *has ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-ĭmus,	*We ruled,* or, *have ruled.*
	rex-istis,	*ye ruled,* or, *have ruled.*
	rex-ērunt, *v.* ēre,	*they ruled,* or, *have ruled.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕram,	*I had ruled.*
	rex-ĕras,	*you had ruled.*
	rex-ĕrat,	*he had ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-ĕrāmus,	*We had ruled.*
	rex-ĕrātis,	*ye had ruled.*
	rex-ĕrant,	*they had ruled.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will*

Sing.	Rĕg-am,	*I shall rule.*
	rĕg-es,	*you will rule.*
	rĕg-et,	*he will rule.*
Plur.	Rĕg-ēmus,	*We shall rule.*
	rĕg-ētis,	*ye shall rule.*
	rĕg-ent,	*they will rule.*

6. Second Future, or, Future Perfect Tense —*shall have, will have.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕro,	*I shall have ruled.*
	rex-ĕris,	*you will have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrit,	*he will have ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-ĕrĭmus,	*We shall have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrĭtis,	*ye will have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrint,	*they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Rĕg-e, reg-ĭto,	*Rule thou.*
	rĕg-ĭto,	*let him rule.*
Plur.	Rĕg-ĭte, reg-ĭtote,	*Rule ye.*
	rĕg-unto,	*let them rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing.	Rĕg-am,	*I may rule.*
	rĕg-as,	*you may rule.*
	rĕg-at,	*he may rule.*
Plur.	Rĕg-āmus,	*We may rule.*
	rĕg-ātis,	*ye may rule.*
	rĕg-ant,	*they may rule.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might.*

Sing.	Rĕg-ĕrem,	*I might rule.*
	rĕg-ĕres,	*you might rule.*
	rĕg-ĕret,	*he might rule.*
Plur.	Rĕg-ĕrēmus,	*We might rule.*
	rĕg-ĕrētis,	*ye might rule.*
	rĕg-ĕrent,	*they might rule.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing.	Rex-ĕrim,	*I may have ruled.*
	rex-ĕris,	*you may have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrit,	*he may have ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-ĕrĭmus,	*We may have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrĭtis,	*ye may have ruled.*
	rex-ĕrint,	*they may have ruled.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

Sing.	Rex-issem,	*I would have ruled.*
	rex-isses,	*you would have ruled.*
	rex-isset,	*he would have ruled.*
Plur.	Rex-issēmus,	*We would have ruled.*
	rex-issētis,	*ye would have ruled.*
	rex-issent,	*they would have ruled.*

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing.	Rectū-rus sim,	*I may be about to rule.*
	rectū-rus sis,	*you may be about to rule.*
	rectū-rus sit,	*he may be about to rule.*
Plur.	Rectū-ri sīmus,	*We may be about to rule.*
	rectū-ri sītis,	*ye may be about to rule.*
	rectū-ri sint,	*they may be about to rule.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-ĕre, *to rule.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rectū-rum esse, *or* fŏre, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Regen-di,	*of ruling.*
regen-do,	*in ruling.*
regen-dum,	*to rule.*

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Rect-um, *to rule.*	Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future.
Reg-ens, *ruling.*	Rectū-rus, *about to rule.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing.	Aud-io,	*I hear, am hearing,* or, *do hear.*
	aud-is,	*you hear, are hearing,* or, *do hear.*
	aud-it,	*he hears, is hearing,* or, *does hear.*
Plur.	Aud-īmus,	*We hear, are hearing,* or, *do hear.*
	aud-ītis,	*ye hear, are hearing,* or, *do hear.*
	aud-iunt,	*they hear, are hearing,* or, *do hear.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing.	Audiē-bam,	*I did hear,* or, *was hearing.*
	audiē-bas,	*you did hear,* or, *were hearing.*
	audiē-bat,	*he did hear,* or, *was hearing.*
Plur.	Audiē-bāmus,	*We did hear,* or, *were hearing.*
	audiē-bātis,	*ye did hear,* or, *were hearing.*
	audiē-bant,	*they did hear,* or, *were hearing.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Audīv-i,	*I heard,* or, *have heard.*
	audīv-isti,	*you heard,* or, *have heard.*
	audīv-it,	*he heard,* or, *has heard.*
Plur.	Audīv-ĭmus,	*We heard,* or, *have heard.*
	audīv-istis,	*ye heard,* or, *have heard.*
	audīv-ērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they heard,* or, *have heard.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Audīv-ĕram,	*I had heard.*
	audīv-ĕras,	*you had heard.*
	audīv-ĕrat,	*he had heard.*
Plur.	Audīv-ĕrāmus,	*We had heard.*
	audīv-ĕrātis,	*ye had heard.*
	audīv-ĕrant,	*they had heard.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will.*

Sing.	Audi-am,	*I shall hear.*
	audi-es,	*you will hear.*
	audi-et,	*he will hear.*
Plur.	Audi-ēmus,	*We shall hear.*
	audi-ētis,	*ye will hear.*
	audi-ent,	*they will hear.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing.	Audīv-ĕro,	*I shall have heard.*
	Audīv-ĕris,	*you will have heard.*
	Audīv-ĕrit,	*he will have heard.*
Plur.	Audīv-ĕrīmus,	*We shall have heard.*
	Audīv-ĕrītis,	*ye will have heard.*
	Audīv-ĕrint,	*they will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Aud-i, aud-īto,	*Hear thou,*
	aud-īto,	*let him hear.*
Plur.	Aud-īte, aud-ītōte,	*Hear ye.*
	aud-iunto,	*let them hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing.	Audi-am,	*I may hear.*
	audi-as,	*you may hear.*
	audi-at,	*he may hear.*
Plur.	Audi-āmus,	*We may hear.*
	audi-ātis,	*ye may hear.*
	audi-ant,	*they may hear.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might.*

Sing.	Audī-rem,	*I might hear.*
	audī-res,	*you might hear.*
	audī-ret,	*he might hear.*
Plur.	Audī-rēmus,	*We might hear.*
	audī-rētis,	*ye might hear.*
	audī-rent,	*they might hear.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing.	Audīv-ĕrim,	*I may have heard.*
	audīv-ĕris,	*you may have heard.*
	audīv-ĕrit,	*he may have heard.*
Plur.	Audīv-ĕrĭmus,	*We may have heard.*
	audīv-ĕrĭtis,	*ye may have heard.*
	audīv-ĕrint,	*they may have heard.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

Sing.	Audīv-issem,	*I would have heard.*
	audīv-isses,	*you would have heard.*
	audīv-isset,	*he would have heard.*
Plur.	Audīv-issēmus,	*We would have heard.*
	audīv-issētis,	*ye would have heard.*
	audīv-issent,	*they would have heard.*

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing.	Audītū-rus sim,	*I may be about to hear.*
	audītū-rus sis,	*you may be about to hear.*
	audītū-rus sit,	*he may be about to hear.*
Plur.	Audītū-ri sīmus,	*We may be about to hear.*
	audītū-ri sītis,	*ye may be about to hear.*
	audītū-ri sint,	*they may be about to hear.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-īre, *to hear.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīv-isse, *to have heard.*

Future Tense.

Audītū-rum esse, *or* fŏre, *to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audien-di,	*of hearing.*
audien-do,	*in hearing.*
audien-dum,	*to hear.*

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Audīt-um, *to hear.*	Audīt-u, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future.
Audi-ens, *hearing.*	Audītū-rus, *about to hear.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS are conjugated thus:

Present.

Sing.	Dĕcet me,	*It becomes me,* or, *I ought.*
	dĕcet te,	*it becomes you,* or, *you ought.*
	dĕcet illum,	*it becomes him,* or, *he ought.*
Plur.	Dĕcet nos,	*It becomes us,* or, *we ought.*
	dĕcet vos,	*it becomes you,* or, *ye ought.*
	dĕcet illos,	*it becomes them,* or, *they ought.*

Imperfect.

Dĕcēbat me,
dĕcēbat te, &c.

Like the third sing. of *moneo;* and so on, through all the tenses.

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR* are thus declined:

1. Ăm-or, ăm-āris *vel* am-āre, amāt-us sum *vel** fui; am-āri; amāt-us, aman-dus; *to be loved.*

2. Mŏn-ēor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ēre, mŏnĭt-us sum *vel* fui; mon-ēri; monit-us, monén-dus; *to be advised.*

3. Rĕg-or, rĕg-ĕris *vel* reg-ĕre, rect-us sum *vel* fui; reg-i; rectus, regén-dus; *to be ruled.*

4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-īre, audīt-us sum *vel* fui; aud-īri; audīt-us, audién-dus; *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Ămor,	*I am loved.*
	amāris, *v.* am-āre,	*you are loved.*
	am-ātur,	*he is loved.*
Plur.	Am-āmur,	*We are loved.*
	am-āmĭni,	*ye are loved.*
	am-antur,	*they are loved.*

* There are, however, very few instances (if any) of such forms as *amatus fui* being used, by good authors, as the perfect tense, and equivalent to *amatus sum.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved.*
	am-ābāris, *v.* -ābāre,	*you were loved.*
	am-ābātur,	*he was loved.*
Plur.	Am-ābāmur,	*We were loved.*
	am-ābāmini,	*ye were loved.*
	am-ābantur,	*they were loved.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us sum, *vel* fui,	*I have been loved.*
	amāt-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*you have been loved.*
	amāt-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i sŭmus, *v.* fŭimus,	*We have been loved.*
	amāt-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been loved.*
	amāt-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* -ēre,	*they have been loved.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us ĕram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been loved.*
	amāt-us ĕras, *v.* fuĕras,	*you had been loved.*
	amāt-us ĕrat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i ĕrāmus, *v.* fuĕrāmus,	*We had been loved.*
	amat-i ĕrātis, *v.* fuĕrātis,	*ye had been loved.*
	amāt-i ĕrant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been loved.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will be.*

Sing.	Am-ābor,	*I shall be loved.*
	am-ābĕris, *v.* -ābĕre,	*you will be loved.*
	am-ābĭtur,	*he will be loved.*
Plur.	Am-ābĭmur,	*We shall be loved.*
	am-ābĭmini,	*ye will be loved.*
	am-ābuntur,	*they will be loved.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us ĕro, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved.*
	amāt-us ĕris, *v.* fuĕris,	*you will have been loved.*
	amāt-us ĕrit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he will have been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i ĕrĭmus, *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We shall have been loved.*
	amāt-i ĕrĭtis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye will have been loved.*
	amat-i ĕrunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Am-āre, am-ātor,	*Be thou loved.*
	am-ātor,	*let him be loved.*
Plur.	Am-āmĭni, am-āmĭnor,	*Be ye loved.*
	am-antor,	*let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Am-er,	*I may be loved.*
	am-ēris, *v.* am-ēre,	*you may be loved.*
	am-ētur,	*he may be loved.*
Plur.	Am-ēmur,	*We may be loved.*
	am-ēmĭni,	*ye may be loved.*
	am-entur,	*they may be loved.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing.	Am-ārer,	*I might be loved.*
	am-ārēris, *v.* -arēre,	*you might be loved.*
	am-ārētur,	*he might be loved.*
Plur.	Am-ārēmur,	*We might be loved.*
	am-ārēmini,	*ye might be loved.*
	am-ārentur,	*they might be loved.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us sim, *v.* fuerim,	*I may have been loved.*
	amāt-us sis, *v.* fueris,	*you may have been loved.*
	amāt-us sit, *v.* fuerit,	*he may have been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i simus, *v.* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been loved.*
	amāt-i sitis, *v.* fuerĭtis,	*ye may have been loved.*
	amāt-i sint, *v.* fuerint,	*they may have been loved.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Amāt-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been loved.*
	amāt-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*you would have been loved.*
	amāt-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been loved.*
Plur.	Amāt-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been loved.*
	amāt-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been loved.*
	amāt-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Am-āri, *to be loved.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Amāt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

Future Tense.

Amāt-um īri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Amāt-us, *loved,* or, *being loved.*

The Participle in *dus,* or gerundive.

Aman-dus, *to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Mŏn-eor,	*I am advised.*
	mon-ēris, *v.* -ēre,	*you are advised.*
	mon-ētur,	*he is advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ēmur,	*We are advised.*
	mon-ēmĭni,	*ye are advised.*
	mon-entur,	*they are advised.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbar,	*I was advised.*
	mon-ēbāris, *v.* -ēbāre,	*you were advised.*
	mon-ēbātur,	*he was advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ēbāmur,	*We were advised.*
	mon-ēbāmĭni,	*ye were advised.*
	mon-ēbantur,	*they were advised.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us sum, *v.* fui,	*I have been advised.*
	monĭt-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*you have been advised.*
	monĭt-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i sumus, *v.* fŭĭmus,	*We have been advised.*
	monĭt-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been advised.*
	monĭt-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*they have been advised.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us ĕram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been advised.*
	monĭt-us ĕras, *v.* fuĕras,	*you had been advised.*
	monĭt-us ĕrat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i ĕrāmus, *v.* fuĕrāmus,	*We had been advised.*
	monĭt-i ĕrātis, *v.* fuĕrātis,	*ye had been advised.*
	monĭt-i ĕrant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been advised.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will be.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbor,	*I shall be advised.*
	mon-ebĕris, *v.* ēbĕre,	*you will be advised.*
	mon-ēbĭtur,	*he will be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ēbĭmur,	*We shall be advised.*
	mon-ēbĭmĭni,	*ye will be advised.*
	mon-ēbuntur,	*they will be advised.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us ĕro, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been advised.*
	monĭt-us ĕris, *v.* fuĕris,	*you will have been advised.*
	monĭt-us ĕrit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he will have been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i ĕrĭmus, *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We shall have been advised.*
	monĭt-i ĕrĭtis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye will have been advised.*
	monĭt-i ĕrunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they will have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Mon-ēre, mon-ētor,	*Be thou advised.*
	mon-ētor,	*let him be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ēmĭni, mon-ēmĭnor,	*Be ye advised.*
	mon-entor,	*let them be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Mon-ear,	*I may be advised.*
	mon-eāris, *v.* mon-eāre,	*you may be advised.*
	mon-eātur,	*he may be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-eāmur,	*We may be advised.*
	mon-eāmĭni,	*ye may be advised.*
	mon-eantur,	*they may be advised.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing.	Mon-ērer,	*I might be advised.*
	mon-ērēris, *v.* -ērēre,	*you might be advised.*
	mon-ērētur,	*he might be advised.*
Plur.	Mon-ērēmur,	*We might be advised.*
	mon-ērēmĭni,	*ye might be advised.*
	mon-ērentur,	*they might be advised.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim,	*I may have been advised.*
	monĭt-us sis, *v.* fuĕris,	*you may have been advised.*
	monĭt-us sit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he may have been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i sīmus, *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We may have been advised.*
	monĭt-i sītis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye may have been advised.*
	monĭt-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they may have been advised.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Monĭt-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been advised.*
	monĭt-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*you would have been advised.*
	monĭt-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been advised.*
Plur.	Monĭt-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been advised.*
	monĭt-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been advised.*
	monĭt-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēri, *to be advised.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Monĭt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monĭt-um īri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Monĭt-us, *advised,* or, *being advised.*

The Participle in *dus,* or the gerundive.

Monen-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕgor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Rĕg-or,	*I am ruled.*
	reg-ĕris, *v.* reg-ĕre,	*you are ruled.*
	reg-ĭtur,	*he is ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ĭmur,	*We are ruled.*
	reg-ĭmĭni,	*ye are ruled.*
	reg-untur,	*they are ruled.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Reg-ēbar,	*I was ruled.*
	reg-ēbāris, *v.* ēbāre,	*you were ruled.*
	reg-ēbātur,	*he was ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ēbāmur,	*We were ruled.*
	reg-ēbāmĭni,	*ye were ruled.*
	reg-ēbantur,	*they were ruled.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sum, *v.* fui,	*I have been ruled.*
	rect-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*you have been ruled.*
	rect-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i sŭmus, *v.* fuĭmus,	*We have been ruled.*
	rect-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been ruled.*
	rect-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*they have been ruled.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Rect-us ĕram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been ruled.*
	rect-us ĕras, *v.* fuĕras,	*you had been ruled.*
	rect-us ĕrat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i ĕrāmus, *v.* fuĕrāmus,	*We had been ruled.*
	rect-i ĕrātis, *v.* fuĕrātis,	*ye had been ruled.*
	rect-i ĕrant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been ruled.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar,	*I shall be ruled.*
	reg-ēris, *v.* reg-ēre,	*you will be ruled.*
	reg-ētur,	*he will be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ēmur,	*We shall be ruled.*
	reg-ēmĭni,	*ye will be ruled.*
	reg-entur,	*they will be ruled.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us ĕro, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been ruled.*
	rect-us ĕris, *v.* fuĕris,	*you will have been ruled.*
	rect-us ĕrit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he will have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i ĕrĭmus *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We shall have been ruled.*
	rect-i ĕrĭtis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye will have been ruled.*
	rect-i ĕrunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they will have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Rĕg-ĕre, reg-ĭtor,	*Be thou ruled.*
	reg-ĭtor,	*let him be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ĭmĭni, reg-ĭmĭnor,	*Be ye ruled.*
	reg-untor,	*let them be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar,	*I may be ruled.*
	reg-āris, *v.* reg-āre,	*you may be ruled.*
	reg-ātur,	*he may be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-āmur,	*We may be ruled.*
	reg-āmĭni,	*ye may be ruled.*
	reg-antur,	*they may be ruled.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ĕrer,	*I might be ruled.*
	reg-ĕrēris, *v.* reg-ĕrēre,	*you might be ruled.*
	reg-ĕrētur,	*he might be ruled.*
Plur.	Reg-ĕrēmur,	*We might be ruled.*
	reg-ĕrēmĭni,	*ye might be ruled.*
	reg-ĕrentur,	*they might be ruled.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim,	*I may have been ruled.*
	rect-us sis, *v.* fuĕris,	*you may have been ruled.*
	rect-us sit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he may have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i sīmus, *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We may have been ruled.*
	rect-i sītis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye may have been ruled.*
	rect-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they may have been ruled.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been ruled.*
	rect-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*you would have been ruled.*
	rect-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been ruled.*
Plur.	Rect-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been ruled.*
	rect-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been ruled.*
	rect-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rect-um fŭi, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Rect-us, *ruled,* or, *being ruled.*

The Participle in *dus,* or gerundive.

Regen-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Aud-ior,	*I am heard.*
	aud-īris, *v.* aud-īre,	*you are heard.*
	aud-ītur,	*he is heard.*
Plur.	Aud-īmur,	*We are heard.*
	aud-īmĭni,	*ye are heard:*
	aud-iuntur,	*they are heard.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Aud-iēbar,	*I was heard.*
	aud-iēbāris, *v.* aud-iēbāre,	*you were heard.*
	aud-iēbātur,	*he was heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iēbāmur,	*We were heard.*
	aud-iēbāmĭni,	*ye were heard.*
	aud-iēbantur,	*they were heard.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us sum, *v.* fui,	*I have been heard.*
	audīt-us es, *v.* fuisti,	*you have been heard.*
	audīt-us est, *v.* fuit,	*he has been heard.*
Plur.	Audīt-i sŭmus, *v.* fŭimus,	*We have been heard.*
	audīt-i estis, *v.* fuistis,	*ye have been heard.*
	audit-i sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*they have been heard.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us ĕram, *v.* fuĕram,	*I had been heard.*
	audīt-us ĕras, *v.* fuĕras,	*you had been heard.*
	audīt-us ĕrat, *v.* fuĕrat,	*he had been heard.*
Plur.	Audīt-i ĕrāmus, *v.* fuĕrāmus,	*We had been heard.*
	audīt-i ĕrātis, *v.* fuĕrātis,	*ye had been heard.*
	audīt-i ĕrant, *v.* fuĕrant,	*they had been heard.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall,* or, *will be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	*I shall be heard.*
	aud-iēris, *v.* aud-iēre,	*you will be heard.*
	aud-iētur,	*he will be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iēmur,	*We shall be heard.*
	aud-iēmĭni,	*ye will be heard.*
	aud-ientur,	*they will be heard.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us ĕro, *v.* fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard.*
	audīt-us ĕris, *v.* fuĕris,	*you will have been heard.*
	audīt-us ĕrit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he will have been heard.*
Plur.	Audīt-i ĕrĭmus, *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We shall have been heard.*
	audīt-i ĕrĭtis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye will have been heard.*
	audīt-i ĕrunt, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Aud-īre, aud-ītor,	*Be thou heard.*
	audī-tor,	*let him be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-īmĭni, aud-īmĭnor,	*Be ye heard.*
	aud-iuntor,	*let them be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	*I may be heard.*
	aud-iāris, *v.* aud-iāre,	*you may be heard.*
	aud-iātur,	*he may be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iāmur,	*We may be heard.*
	aud-iāmĭni,	*ye may be heard.*
	aud-iantur,	*they may be heard.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might be.*

Sing.	Aud-īrer,	*I might be heard.*
	aud-īrēris, *v.* aud-īrēre,	*you might be heard.*
	aud-īrētur,	*he might be heard.*
Plur.	Aud-īrēmur,	*We might be heard.*
	aud-īrēmĭni,	*ye might be heard.*
	aud-īrentur,	*they might be heard.*

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us sim, *v.* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard.*
	audīt-us sis, *v.* fuĕris,	*you may have been heard.*
	audīt-us sit, *v.* fuĕrit,	*he may have been heard.*
Plur.	Audīt-i sīmus, *v.* fuĕrĭmus,	*We may have been heard.*
	audīt-i sītis, *v.* fuĕrĭtis,	*ye may have been heard.*
	audit-i sint, *v.* fuĕrint,	*they may have been heard.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us essem, *v.* fuissem,	*I would have been heard.*
	audīt-us esses, *v.* fuisses,	*you would have been heard.*
	audīt-us esset, *v.* fuisset,	*he would have been heard.*
Plur.	Audīt-i essēmus, *v.* fuissēmus,	*We would have been heard.*
	audīt-i essētis, *v.* fuissētis,	*ye would have been heard.*
	audīt-i essent, *v.* fuissent,	*they would have been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-īri, *to be heard.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense.

Audīt-um īri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Audīt-us, *heard,* or, *being heard.*

The Participle in *dus,* or gerundive.

Audien-dus, *to be heard.*

The two Participles future, in *rus* and in *dus,* are often so combined with the tenses of *sum,* that a new conjugation called the *periphrastic* conjugation is formed in the following manner:—

ACTIVE.

Pres.	Amaturus sum, etc.	*I am about to love.*
Imperf.	Amaturus eram, etc.	*I was about to love.*
Perf.	Amaturus fui, etc.	*I have been about to love.*
Pluperf.	Amaturus fueram, etc.	*I had been about to love.*
1st Fut.	Amaturus ero, etc.	*I shall be about to love.*
2nd Fut.	Amaturus fuero, etc.	*I shall have been about to love.*

And the other moods are formed from the indicative, as is shewn in the conjugation of *sum :*

PASSIVE.

Pres.	Amandus sum,	*I am meet to be loved.*
Imperf.	Amandus eram,	*I was meet to be loved.*
Perf.	Amandus fui,	*I have been meet to be loved.*
Pluperf.	Amandus fueram,	*I had been meet to be loved.*
1st Fut.	Amandus ero,	*I shall be meet to be loved.*
2nd Fut.	Amandus fuero,	*I shall have been meet to be loved.*

DEPONENT verbs are conjugated in this manner:

Hortor, hortāris *v.* hortāre, hortātus sum *v.* fui, hortāri; hortandi, hortando, hortandum; hortatum, hortatu; hortans, hortatus, hortaturus, hortandus:

And so in the other conjugations.

From the third person singular of passive verbs an impersonal verb is formed; and this third person passive exists in words which neither have, nor are capable of having, a regular passive voice: as,"

Itur, *that is,*	Itur a me,	*I go.*
	Itur a te,	*you go.*
	Itur ab illo,	*he goes.*
	Itur a nobis,	*we go.*
	Itur a vobis,	*ye go.*
	Itur ab illis,	*they go.*
ĭtum est, *that is,*	ĭtum est a me,	*I went.*
	itum est a te,	*you went.*
	itum est ab illo,	*he went.*
	itum est a nobis,	*we went.*
	itum est a vobis,	*ye went.*
	itum est ab illis,	*they went.*

Future.

Eundum est, *that is,*	Eundum est a me,	*I must go.*
	Eundum est a te,	*you must go.*
	Eundum est ab illo,	*he must go.*
	Eundum est a nobis,	*we must go.*
	Eundum est a vobis,	*ye must go.*
	Eundum est ab illis,	*they must go.*

And so in all other teuses. The pronoun is scarcely ever expressed in Latin with these impersonals, but is left to be inferred from the context; as, Pugnātum est, *they fought;* vivĭtur, *one lives,* etc.

DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following:—

1. Possum, pŏtes, pŏtui, posse, pŏtens:* *to be able.*

2. Vŏlo, vis, vŏlui, velle; vŏlendi, vŏlendo, vŏlendum; vŏlens: *to be willing.*

3. Nōlo, nonvis, nōlui, nolle; nōlendi, nōlendo, nōlendum; nōlens: *to be unwilling.*

4. Mālo, māvis, mālui, malle; mālendi, mālendo, mālendum; mālens: *to be more willing,* or, *to have rather.*

5. Ĕdo, ĕdis, *vel* ĕs, ēdi, ĕdĕre *vel* esse: ĕdendi, ĕdendo, ĕdendum; ēsum, ēsu; ĕdens, ēsurus: *to eat.*

6. Fĕro, fers, tŭli, ferre; fĕrendi, fĕrendo, fĕrendum; lātum, lātu; fĕrens, lātūrus: *to bear,* or, *suffer.*

7. Fīo, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fīĕri; factus, făciendus: *to be made,* or, *done.*

8. Fĕror, ferris *vel* ferre, lātus sum *vel* fui, ferri; lātus, fĕrendus: *to be borne,* or, *suffered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able,* &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest,	Possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Vŏlo,	vis,	vult,	vŏlŭmus,	vultis,	vŏlunt.
Nōlo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nōlŭmus,	nonvultis,	nōlunt.
Mālo,	māvis,	māvult,	mālŭmus,	māvultis,	mālunt.
Ĕdo,	ĕdis, *v.* es,	ĕdit, *v.* est,	ĕdĭmus,	ĕdĭtis, *v.* estis,	ĕdunt.
Fĕro,	fers,	fert,	fĕrĭmus,	fertis,	fĕrunt.
Fīo,	fis,	fit,	fīmus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Fĕror,	ferris, *v.* ferre,	fertur,	fĕrĭmur,	ferĭmĭni,	feruntur.

*Potens is, however, only actually used as an adjective, in the sense of *powerful.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I was able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Pŏt-ĕram,	ĕras	ĕrat,	ĕrāmus,	ĕrātis,	ĕrant.
Vŏlē-bam, Nōlē-bam, Mālē-bam, Ĕdē-bam, Fĕrē-bam, Fīē-bam,	bas,	bat,	bāmus,	bātis,	bant.
Fĕrē-bar,	bāris, *v.* bāre,	bātur,	bāmur,	bāmĭni,	bantur.

3. Perfect Tense.—*I have been able*, &c.

Singular.				*Plural.*		
Pŏtu-i, Vŏlu-i, Nōlu-i, Mālu-i, Ĕd-i, Tŭl-i,	isti,	it,		ĭmus,	istis,	ērunt, *vel* ēre.
Fact-us,	sum, *v.*	es, *v.*	est, *v.*	i sŭmus, *v.*	estis, *v.*	sunt, *v.* fuērunt, *v.*
Lāt-us,	fui;	fuisti;	fuit;	fuĭmus;	fuistis;	fuēre.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I had been able*, &c.

Singular.				*Plural.*		
Pŏtu-ĕram, Vŏlu-ĕram, Nōlu-ĕram, Mālu-ĕram, Ĕd-ĕram, Tŭl-ĕram,	ĕras,	ĕrat,		ĕrāmus,	ĕrātis,	ĕrant.
Fāct-us,	ĕram, *v.*	ĕras, *v.*	ĕrat, *v.*	i ĕrāmus, *v.*	ĕrātis, *v.*	ĕrant, *v.*
Lāt-us,	fuĕram;	-ĕras;	-ĕrat;	fuĕrāmus;	fuĕrātis;	fuĕrant.

5. First Future Tense.—*I shall, or, will be able*, &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Pŏt-ĕro,	ĕris,	ĕrit,	ĕrĭmus,	ĕrĭtis,	ĕrunt.
Vŏl-am, Nōl-am, Māl-am, Ĕd-am, Fĕr-am, Fī-am,	es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Fĕr-ar,	ĕris, *v.* ēre,	ētur,	ēmur,	ēmĭni,	entur.

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*I shall have been able.*

Singular.				*Plural.*			
Pŏtuĕro, Vŏluĕro, Nōluĕro, Māluĕro, Ēdĕro, Tŭlĕro,	ĕris,		ĕrit,	ĕrĭmus,	ĕrĭtis,		ĕrint.
Factus,	ĕro,	ĕris,	ĕrit,	Facti,	ĕrĭmus,	ĕrĭtis,	ĕrunt,
	v.	*v.*	*v.*		*v.*	*v.*	*v.*
Lātus,	fuĕro,	fuĕris,	fuĕrit,	Lati,	fuĕrīmus,	fuĕrītis,	fuĕrint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo,* and *malo,* have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling*, &c.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Nōli, nōlīto ;	nōlīte, nōlītōte.
Ĕde, ĕdito, *vel* Es, esto ;	ĕdite, ĕdĭtōte, *vel,* este,
ĕdito, *vel,* esto ;	estote ; ĕdunto.
Fer, ferto ; ferto ;	ferte, fertote ; feruntо.
Fi, fito ; fito ;	fite, fitote ; fiunto.
Fer-re, -tor ; fertor ;	fĕrĭmĭn-i, -or ; feruntor.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able,* &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Poss-im, Vĕl-im, Nōl-im, Māl-im,	is,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	int.
Ĕd-am, Fĕr-am, Fī-am,	as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
Fĕr-ar,	-āris, *v.* āre ;	ātur,	āmur,	āmĭni,	antur.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I might be able,* &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Poss-em, Vell-em, Noll-em, Mall-em, Ēdĕr-em, *vel,* Ess-em, Ferr-em, Fĭĕr-em,	es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Ferr-er,	-ēris, *v.* ēre ;	ētur,	ēmur,	ēmĭni,	entur.

3. Perfect Tense.—*I may have been able,* &c.

Singular.				*Plural.*		
Pŏtu-ĕrim, Vŏlu-ĕrim, Nōlu-ĕrim, Mālu-ĕrim, Ēd-ĕrim, Tŭl-ĕrim,	ĕris,	ĕrit,		ĕrĭmus,	ĕrĭtis,	ĕrint.
Fact-us,	sim, *v.*	sis, *v.*	sit, *v.*	i sīmus, *v.*	sītis, *v.*	sint, *v.*
Lāt-us,	fuĕ-rim ;	ris ;	rit ;	fuĕrĭmus ;	fuĕrĭtis ;	fuĕrint.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I should have been able,* &c.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Pŏtu-issem, Vŏlu-issem, Nōlu-issem, Mālu-issem, Ēd-issem, Tŭl-issem,	isses,	isset,	issemus,	issētis,	issent.
Fact-us,	essem, esses,	esset,	i essēmus,	essētis,	essent,
	v. *v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*	*v.*
Lāt-us,	fuissem; isses;	isset;	fuissēmus ;	fuissētis ;	fuissent.

5. Future Tense.—*I may be about to eat,* &c.

Ēsurus Lāturus	sim,	sis,	sit,	i sīmus,	sītis,	sint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*to be able,* &c.

Posse.	Ĕdĕre, *vel,* esse.
Velle.	Ferre.
Nolle.	Fĭĕri.
Malle.	Ferri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—*to have been able,* &c.

Pŏtuisse.	Ēdisse.
Vŏluisse.	Tŭlisse.
Nōluisse.	Factum esse, *vel,* fuisse.
Māluisse.	Lātum esse, *vel,* fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat,* &c.

Ēsūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Lātūrum esse.	Lātum iri.

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo,* have no Future Tense of the Infinitive mood.

EO, to go, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, *īvi, īre, eundi, eundo, eundum, ĭtum, ĭtu, iens, ĭtūrus.

Indic. M. Pres. T. *Sing.* Eo, is, it. *Pl.* Imus, ītis, eunt.

* In all the compounds of *eo,* as *redeo, abeo,* etc. this tense is almost invariably found *ii,* not *ivi ;* as, *redii, abii,* etc.

Imp. Tense. Sing. Ibam, ības, ībat. *Pl.*-āmus, -ātis, -ant.
Perf. Tense. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, ivērunt, *v.* ēre.
Pluperf. Tense. Ivĕram, -as, -at; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
First Fut. Sing. Ibo, ībis, ībit. *Pl.* -ĭmus, -ĭtis, -unt.
2nd Fut. Ivĕro, īvĕris, īvĕrit; īvĕrīmus, īvĕrītis, īvĕrint.
Imp. M. Sing. I, ito; ito. *Pl.* īte, itote; eunto.
Potent. M. Pres. Sing. Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eāmus, eātis, [eant.
Imperf. Irem, *etc.*
Perf. Ivĕrim, *etc.*
Pluperf. Ivissem, *etc.*
Fut. Iturus sim, *etc.*
Gerunds; Eundi, eundo, eundum.
Participle Pres. T. Iens, *gen.* eüntis.
Participle Future, Itūrus.*

Obs. In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined; also *queo,* to be able, and *nequeo,* to be unable; except that these last two have no Imperative mood or Gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *defective,* that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as,

Aio, *I say.*
Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* ——— Aiunt.
Imp. T. Sing. Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat. *Pl.* -bamus, -batis, -bant.
Perf. Tense. Sing. — Ait.
Sub. or *Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing.*—Aias, aiat. *Pl.* aiant.
Particip. Pres. Tense. Aiens.

Fari, *to speak.*
Pres. 3*d. Sing.* Fātur.
Perf. Fātus sum, es, *etc.*
Pluperf. Fātus eram, *etc.*
First Fut. Fābor—no other person.

* *Eo* has no passive voice except in the third sing. used as an impersonal verb, as has been shewn above (p. 57,) and the passive participle in *dus,* or gerundive *eundus*; but some of its compounds, *ădeo,* to approach, *prætereo,* to pass by, &c. have a passive voice, formed regularly from the active; as, *adeor, adiris, aditur,* etc. imperf. *adibar,* etc.

Imper. Fāre.
Gerunds. Fandi, Faudo.
Supine. Fatu. — *Part. Perf.* Fatus. — *Part. Pass.* [Fandus.

ĂVE, *Hail!*
Imper. M. Sing.—Ăve, ăvēto.—*Pl.* Ăvēte, ăvētōte.—*Infinitive Mood.* Ăvēre.

SALVE, *Hail!*
Indicat. M. Future T. Sing. — Salvēbis.
Imper. M. S.—Salve, salveto.—*Pl.* Salvēte, salvētōte.
Infinitive M. Salvēre.

CEDO, *Give me.*
Imper. M. Sing.—Cĕdo.—*Pl.*—Cette.*

QUÆSO, *I pray.*
Indic. M. Pres. T. S. Quæso. *Pl.* Quæsŭmus.

INQŬAM, *I say.*
Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Inquam, -quis, -quit. *Pl.* Inquĭmus, inquĭtis, inquiunt.
Preterimp. T. S.—Inquiebat. *Pl.*—Inquiebant.
Preterp. T. S. —Inquisti.
Future T. Sing.—Inquies, inquiet.

Cœpi, I have begun, *mĕmĭni,* I remember, *nōvi,* I know, *odi,* I hate, are perfects of obsolete presents, (except *novi,* which is also the perfect of *nosco,)* and have these tenses only which are derived from the perfect. Their pluperfect tense has the sense of the imperfect; i.e. *memineram,* "I did remember," not, "I had remembered," *etc.* and the second future has the sense of the first future; as, *odero* "I shall hate," not "I shall have hated."

Cœpi,	Mĕmĭni,	(So, ōdi, nōvi.)
Cœpisti,	Mĕmĭnisti,	
Cœpit,	Mĕmĭnit,	
Cœpĭmus,	Mĕmĭnĭmus,	
Cœpistis,	Mĕmĭnistis,	
Cœperunt, *v.* ēre.	Mĕmĭnērunt, *v.* ēre.	

* Found only in the oldest writers.

Pluperf. Cœpĕram, memineram, ōdĕram, nōvĕram.
Future. Cœpĕro, mĕmĭnĕro, ōdĕro, nōvĕro.
Imper. Mĕmento, mĕmentōte.— The other verbs have no imperative.
Potent. Perf. Cœpĕrim, mĕmĭnĕrim, ōdĕrim, nōvĕrim.
Pluperf. Cœpissem, meminissem, odissem, novissem.
Infin. Cœpisse, mĕmĭnisse, ōdisse, nōvisse.
Part. fut. act. Cœpturus, ōsūrus.—The others have no participle.
Perf. part. pass. Cœptus.
Ausim, I may dare, an old form of the present subjunctive of *audeo.*
Ausim, ausis, ausit;——ausint.
Faxim, I may do, a similar form from *facio.*
Faxim, faxis, faxit; faximus, faxitis, faxint.
Fut. faxo.

ADVERBS.

An *Adverb* is a part of speech joined to verbs and nouns adjective (sometimes even to other adverbs) to qualify them; as, *lŏquĭtur bĕne,* he speaks well; *scrĭbunt mălе,* they write badly.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is a part of speech which joins sentences or words together: some connect things of the same kind, and are called *copulative conjunctions;* some connect things which are distinct from each other, and are called *disjunctive conjunctions.*—The copulative conjunctions are *et, ac, atque, necnon,* "and," *nĕque,* "nor," *quàm,* "than."—The disjunctive conjunctions are *aut, vel, ve, sīve, seu,* "or."

* When derived from adjectives, adverbs have comparative and superlative degrees, formed from the corresponding degrees of the adjectives; as, from *doctus* learned, *doctior, doctissimus,* are derived *docte* learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most learnedly.

PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a part of speech which governs a case, and which expresses the relation of nouns to one another, or to verbs; as, *iter per Italiam*, a journey through Italy; *exit e domo*, he goes out of the house.

These Prepositions have an *Accusative* case after them:

Ad, to.
Adversum, Adversus, against, towards.
Ante, before.
Apud, at, *or* near.
Circa, circum, about.
Circĭter, about (of time, or number.)
Cis, citra, on this side,
Contra, against.
Erga, towards.
Extra, without.
Infra, beneath, below.
Inter, between, *or* among.
Intra, within.
Juxta, beside, *or* near to.
Ob, on account of, before, (as *ob oculos*, before the eyes.)
Pĕnes, in the power of.
Per, through.
Pŏne, behind.
Post, after.
Præter, besides, except, before (as, *præter cæteros*, before others.)
Prŏpe, (and compar. and superl. *prŏpius, proxime*) nigh, *or* near to.
Propter, on account of, near to.
Sĕcundum, according to.
Supra, above.
Trans, on the further side.
Versus, towards.
Ultra, beyond.

The Prepositions following have an *Ablative* case after them:

A, (and before vowels *ab.*)* from, by.
Absque, without.
Coram, before, *or* in presence of.
Cum, with.
De, from, concerning.
E, ex, from, out of, in (as *ex ordine*, in order.)
Præ,† before, in comparison of, on account of.
Pro, for, in front of.
Sine, without.
Tenus, up to, as far as.‡

* Before *te*, *abs* is also used in the same sense by Cicero, and before other words by Terence and older writers. It is never used in poetry.

† *Præ* signifies of *place*, with verbs of motion only, and with pronouns.

‡ *Tenus* is used also with a genitive, when the noun is in the plural number; and once by Livy with a noun in the singular; *Corcўræ tĕnus*, as far as Corcyra.

The prepositions *versus* and *tenus* are always, *penes* sometimes, put after the noun governed by them: so, when the noun governed by them is the relative, *ante, contra, inter,* and *propter,* are also placed sometimes after their case: when *cum* is joined with *me, nobis, te, vobis, se,* or the relative, it is put after them, and united with them so as to make one word; as, *mecum, vobiscum, quocum,* etc.

The Prepositions following have either an Accusative or an Ablative case after them:

In, for *into,* signifying motion *towards, against, over,* etc. has an accusative case; as, *Eo in urbem,* I go into the city.

In, meaning "in," has the ablative case; as, *In illo spes est,* my hope is in him.

Sub, after verbs of motion, governs an accusative case, and also when it denotes time; as, *Mittĭtur sub jugum,* he is sent under the yoke; *sub noctem,* about nightfall. When it means "under," it governs an ablative case; as, *Sub terrâ,* under the earth.

Subter, under, beneath, governs the accusative; the ablative only in poetry; (it is very rarely used at all.)

Sŭper, when it means "on, above, besides," governs the accusative case; as, *Sŭper terram,* above the earth: when it means "concerning, about," it govĕrns the ablative; as, *Rŏgĭtans multa sŭper Priamo,* asking many things about Priam. Besides these regular prepositions, some adverbs are used occasionally as prepositions, especially in poetry.

With the Accusative:

Usque (properly, and more usually, in good prose invariably, *usque ad,*) as far as.

With the Ablative:

Pălam, in the presence of.

Prŏcul, (properly, and more usually, *procul a,*) far from.

Sĭmul, (only poetically for *simul cum,*) together with.

With the Accusative or Ablative:

Clam, without the knowledge of, (the accusative, however, is very rare and antiquated.)

OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which betokens a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three Concords, or Agreements, in Latin:

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its nominative case in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who*, or *what?* with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the nominative case to the verb; as, *who reads? who regard not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not,
[a]*Præceptor* [b]*legit*, [a]*vos verò* [b]*negligitis.*

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a neuter substantive in the nominative, in which case the verb agrees with that, as if it were a noun; as,

Diluculò [a]*surgere saluberrimum* [b]*est*,
To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

When two or more substantives are so joined in one sentence, that the verb depends on both or on all of them, the verb is usually put in the plural number, and agrees especially with the nominative case of the most worthy person:* when, however, the nouns denote things, not persons, the verb is often kept in the singular number; as, *Ego et tu sumus in tuto*, I and you are in safety: *Cùm tempus necessitasque postulat*, when time and necessity require.

* In grammatical language, the first person is reckoned more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

Sometimes also a noun of multitude, (that is, a noun expressing more persons or things than one,) though in the singular number itself, is followed by a verb in the plural number; as, *Turba ruunt,* the crowd rushes on.

When the nominative case to the verb is a personal pronoun, it is usually omitted in Latin, unless particular emphasis be desired; as, He governs France, *Regit Galliam:* I am wiser than you, *Ego sum te sapientior.*

THE SECOND CONCORD.

The adjective agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number; as,

[a]*Amicus* [b]*certus in* [a]*re* [b]*incertâ cernitur,*
A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

When two or more substantives come together in one sentence, and have one adjective referring to all of them, the adjective is put in the plural number, and as to gender agrees with the substantive of the most worthy gender, (the masculine being accounted more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter.) But, when the nouns denote things, the adjective is often put in the neuter; when they denote both persons and things, the adjective may either agree with the noun denoting the person, or be put in the neuter gender; as, *Mihi păter et măter mortui sunt,* my father and mother are dead; *Ira et ăvărĭtia pŏtentia sunt,* anger and avarice are powerful.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a noun of the neuter gender, and the adjective agrees with it as if it were such a noun; and sometimes an entire sentence supplies the place of the substantive, and the adjective which is applied to it is put in the neuter gender, as, *Errāre hūmānum est,* to err is human.

Sometimes, when persons are denoted by neuter substantives, the adjective, nevertheless, is put in the

masculine or feminine gender; as, *Millia trīginta servōrum capti sunt,* thirty thousand slaves were taken.

When in English the word *man,* or *thing,* is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the masculine or neuter gender; as,

Multi falluntur, many men are deceived.
Multa me impedierunt, many things have hindered me.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

When you have a relative, ask this question, *who,* or *what?* with the verb; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

[a] *Vir sapit,* [b] *qui pauca loquitur,*
The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it is put in the plural number; and if they be of different persons, the relative agrees with the antecedent of the more worthy person; as, *Ego et tu qui ĕrāmus dŏmi,* I and you who were at home.

Sometimes a sentence supplies the place of the antecedent, and in this case the relative is put in the neuter gender; as, *In tempŏre vēni, quod rērum omnium est prīmum,* I came in time, which is the most important thing of all.

When the relative is placed between two substantives, to both of which it refers, it commonly agrees with the latter; as, *Anĭmal quem vŏcāmus hŏmĭnem,* the animal which we call man.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,
QUÆ GENUS,
AS IN PRÆSENTI,
SYNTAXIS,
ET PROSODIA.

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

SUBSTANTIVES.

I.

PROPRIA quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas ;
Ut sunt Divorum, Mars, Bacchus, Ăpollo ; *Virorum,*
Ut Cāto, Virgĭlius ; *Fluviorum, ut* Tĭbris, Orontes ;
Mensium, ut October ; *Ventorum, ut* Libs, Nŏtus, Auster ;
Montium, ut Ossa ; Alpis *tamen est muliebris, et* Œta,
Cyllēnē, Rhŏdŏpe, *et cæcis gravis ignibus* Ætna ;
Pēlion *est neutrum ;* Sōractĕ, Cĕraunia, *neutra.*

II.

Propria fœmineum referentia nomina sexum,
Fœmineo generi tribuuntur ; sive Dearum
Sunt, ut Jūnŏ, Vĕnus ; *Muliebria, ut* Anna, Phĭlōtis ;
Urbium, ut Elis, Opus ; *Regionum, ut* Græcia, Persis :
Insulæ item nomen, ceu Crēta, Brĭtannia, Cȳprus.
Neutrum Dūlĭchium, *ventura ut regula monstrat :*
Quasdam etiam excipias urbes, nam mascula Sulmo,
Et Delphi, *et similes ; genus est utrumque* Sēlīnus,
Pharsālus, *et* Mărăthon : *Quædam neutralia, ut* Argos,
Tuscŭlum, *item* Tĭbur, *luxuque imbelle* Tărentum,
Pergămaque, *et quot in* a *finem pluralia præstant.*
Fœmineum et neutrum Prænestе *dat,* Ilion, Anxur.
Est neutrum Lătium, *mas* Bosphŏrus, *adjice* Pontus.

III.

Fœminei generis gemmarum nomina disces,
Sapphīrus *veluti ; ast* ŏpălus *mas, atque* smăragdus :
Arborum item œrnes muliebria nomina, ut alnus,
Cūpressus, cedrus ; *mas* spīnus, *mas* ŏleaster.
Cætera in er *neutrale genus plerumque videbis,*
Quale păpāver, ăcer : *queis* thus *atque adjice* rōbur.
Adjungunt muliebre mari cȳtīsusque, rūbusque ;
Intŭbus *in numero plurali habet* intūba *neutrum.*
Nomina sunt volucrum, ceu passer, hĭrundo ; *ferarum.*

Ut felis, vulpes; *et piscium, ut* ostrea, cētus,
Dicta epicœna, quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.
Multa etiam commune dabunt genus; ut lĕpus, anser,
Vespertīlio, mus, grus, bos, cănis, *atque* ĕlĕphantus:
Fœmineumque mari jungunt sus, tīgris, *et* anguis,
Et serpens, dāmæque, *et egentes lumine* talpæ.

IV. Declension i.

As, es, *mascula erunt*; a, e, *inflexio prima,*
Fœminei generis, prohibet nisi sensus, habebit.
Mas Bŏreas, sătrăpes; *muliebris* lītĕra, Circe;
Sed mas scriba *genus, sic* scurra, athlēta, lănista.

V. Declension ii.

Um *neutrale,* us *et* er *dat mas plerumque secunda.*
Sic regnum *neutrum,* dŏmĭnus *mas atque* măgister:
Sed quæ dicta supra sunt, excipienda legenti
Pauca dabunt, nam arbor mālus *muliebris, et urbis*
Nomen Abȳdus *erit, sic* alvus, hŭmus, cŏlus, *atque*
Carbasus, *et* vannus; *sic Nilo nota* phăselus;
Pauca etiam occurrent Græcis deducta, păpȳrus,
Antĭdŏtus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, *et illa*
Os *breve quot claudit, ceu* Dēlos, Sestos, *et* Isthmos.
Sed vīrus, pĕlăgus *neutralia, et adjice* vulgus,
Interdum quamvis hoc inter mascula ponas;
Non genus est ullum quo non pĕnus *invenietur.*

VI. Declension iii.—Masculines.

Tertia quas voces lectori inflexio reddit
Crede mares, si claudit or, os, er, o *quoque rectum,*
Vel quas es *finit, crescitque quibus genitivus.*
Sic hŏnor, *atque* hēros, crāter, sermo*que,* tăpes*que;*
At soror *atque* uxor *muliebria semper, et* arbor;

Sed cor, marmor, ădor *neutralia semper, et* æquor.
Sic est fœminei generis cos, dos*que, sed* os *seu*
Oris *habet sive* ossis *erit neutrale,* chaos*que*
Et mĕlos, *atque alia à linguâ deducta Pelasgâ.*
Mas tŭber *est fructus, sed erit muliebris ut arbor;*
Linter *communis; neutrum* ver, verber, *et* ūber,
Atque cădāver, ĭter, spinther, *quibus adjice* tuber.
Atque per er *finita notant quot nomina plantas.*
Excipias quoque, lector, hyperdissyllabon in do,
Et quot io *claudit verbo deducta,* lĭbīdo,
Formīdo*que velut; sic* dictio, lectio; *porro*
Est cāro *atque* ēcho *atque* Argo *et muliebris* īmāgo
Cùm notat affectum muliebris rite cŭpīdo *est;*
Et tamen hoc vates interdum in mascula cogunt.
Pauca per es *finita licet crescentia disces*
Fœminei generis; merges, merces*que,* quies*que,*
Et tĕgĕs *atque* sĕges; quădrŭpes *communis, et* āles,
Atque obses, cŏmĕs, *atque* hospes, *quibus adjice* princeps.

VII. Declension III.—Feminines.

Omne quod exit in as, ĭs, ȳs, aus, x, es *quoque, quando*
Non genitivo crescit, erit muliebre; superque
Præbet idem genus s *liquidâ præeunte memento.*
Sic piĕtas, fraus, *atque* chlămys, nāvis*que,* rătis*que,*
Pax, rādix, nūbes, *et* hyems, mors; *excĭpe pauca;*
Mas erit as assis, *compostaque; mas* ĕlĕphas*que,*
Et quidquid Græcum genitivo habet antis, *ut* Atlas,
Atque gĭgas, ădămas; *e sensu* vas vădis *est mas;*
Vas vāsis *neutrum, sic* fas *neutrale,* nefas*que.*
Multa quoque is *finita videbis mascula;* pulvis,
Et pollis, cucumis, sanguis, lapis, amnis, *et* axis,
Glis, caulis, cassis, *cùm non crescit genitivo,*
(Cassis *enim, venit à quo* cassĭdis, *est muliebre,*)
Collis, fascis, follis, fūnis, pestis, *et* ensis,
Ignis, pānis, piscis, postis, *et adjice* mensis.
Orbis, sentis, torris, vectis, vermis, *et* unguis
Nātālis; *numero et primo quæ rarius exstant,*

Annāles, *rapidisque* jŭgālĭbus *adde* mŏlāres.
Quinetiam cernes communia pauca, căpālis,
Et scrŏbis, *et* torquis, callis, fīnis, cĭnis; *etsi*
Hæc duo plurali apparent tibi mascula tantum:
Et, quoniam nunc vir nunc fœmina dicitur, hostis
Est commune genus, cīvis, testis, pătruelis.
Est data lex potior cur mas Hălys *exstet, et* Othrys.
Mascula nulla es *non crescens dat,* ăcīnăce *dempto;*
At vātes *commune,* vĕpres *etiam, atque* pălumbes.
Quæ Græca ax *finit, sunt plurima mascula,* thōrax,
Et cordax, anthrax; *sic* ex *quæ plurima claudit,*
Qualis ăpex, cōdex, cīmex, cortex*que,* cŭlex*que,*
Grex, vertex, mūrex, pūlex, caudex*que,* sĭlex*que:*
Pauca per ix *finita,* călix, fornix, *ĭta* phœnix;
Græcaque in yx, *ut* ŏnyx, *et* ŏryx, bombyx*que,* călyx*que:*
Sic quincunx, septunx, *et cætera mascula: porro*
Mascula ădeps, dens, fons, mons, pons, hydrops*que,*
chălybs*que;*
Gryps, torrens, ŏrien*sque,* rŭden*sque,* bĭden*sque,* triden*sque:*
Mascula ĕpops*que* mĕrops*que, et* stirps *communis habetur.*

VIII. Declension iii.—Neuters

Quæ claudunt a, e, i, y, c, *neutra leguntur,*
l, n, t, ar, ur, us; *videas exempla;* poēma,
Et măre, mīsy, sĭnāpi, ālec, lac, mel, ănĭmal*que*
Carmen, *et adde* căput, lăquear, jĕcur, *adjice* tempus:
Mascula sol, mūgil; *sic* sal *plerumque,* sălesque
Plurali semper.—Communia præsul *et* exul,
Atque vĭgil; fīdĭcen, ren, pecten *mascula; et addas*
Deducta à Græcâ linguâ paucissima, delphin,
Līchen, *et* pæan, *primāque è lege* Cithæron,
Sindon, *atque* īcon *muliebria sunt, et* Ămazon,
Et numero Alcyones *quæ primo rarius exstant:*
Significans socium par *mas, mas* turtur, *et* augur,
Fur, vultur, *sic* furfur: *in* us *muliebria pauca,*

Ut virtus, incus, tellus, pălus, *atque* jŭventus,
Atque pĕcus pĕcŭdis, pĕcŏris *dans accipe neutrum.* 125

IX. Declension iv.

U *neutrum, ut* cornū; *mas* us, *ceu* cursus *et* actus;
Portĭcus *atque* trĭbus *muliebria,* ăcus*que,* dŏmus*que,*
Et mănus, *et* quercus, *sic cum* quinquātrĭbus īdus;
Sensus ànus, nūrus, *et* socrus *muliebria monstrat.*

X. Declension v.

Quinta genus muliebre dat, ut spes; *at numero mās*
Plurali tantum, primo commune dies *est.* 131

XI. *ADJECTIVES.*

Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia formam,
Ut felix, audax, *retinent genus omne sub unâ.*
Sub geminâ si voce cadunt, velut omnis *et* omne,
Vox commune duûm prior est, vox altera neutrum. 135
At si tres variant voces, săcer *ut,* săcra, sācrum,
Vox prima est mas, altera fœmina, tertia neutrum.

Sunt queis plurales casus in a *non adhibentur,*
Pauper, ĭnops, pūber, sospes, *cum* dēgĕner, ūber,
Et dīves, lŏcŭples, mĕmor, immĕmor, *atque* sŭperstes. 140

NOUNS HETEROCLITE, or IRREGULAR.

Quæ genus aut flexum variant, quæcunque novato
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, Heteroclita sunto.

Hæc genus in variis numeris variantia cernis;

Nam primo maria hæc numero sunt, neutra secundo :
Tartărus *horribilis, sic* sībĭlus, intŭbus *exstant ;*
Plurali jŏcus *at numero genus addit utrumque,*
Et lŏcus ; *hæc primo muliebria, neutra secundo :*
Pergămos, *et lautis exquirenda* ostrea *cœnis,*
Carbăsus ; *hæc primo neutrum, mas altero habebunt,*
Et sĭser, *et* cœlum, *Junonique* Argos *amatum :*
Rastrum *plurali et* frenum *genere exstat utroque,*
Quin ĕpŭlum *primo, ast* ĕpŭlæ *plurale leguntur.*

Quæ sequitur manca est casu, numerove propago :

His neutris nullos poteris tu cernere casus,
Nî qui sunt, ut scis, tibi semper in hoc genere îdem ;
Hippŏmănes, căcŏēthĕs, ĕpos, mĕlos, *adjice* gummi,
Et fas, mane, nihil, pondo, instar ; *grata perenni*
Sub Zephyro Tempe *plurali ;* tot, quot, *et omnes*
A tribus *ad* centum *numeri, quæ aptota vocantur.*

Sunt quoque rectus abest quĕîs casus nomina multa,
Aut alii, nullo certo ordine deficientes.
Ut fors, frūgis, ŏpis, dăpis, *et* vĭcis, impĕtis, *et* vis,
Verbĕris, *et* fĭdis, *atque* lues, sordem*que*, vepremque ;
Quin ablativo solo sunt pauca videnda,
Ut sunt compĕde, fauce, prĕce, *atque* ambāge ; *sed omnia*
Integra plurali numero plerumque leguntur,
Sic jussu, nātu, permissu, sponte ; rōgātu,
Mandātu ; *sed et his pluralis deficit, atque*
Occurrent quoque plura suo tibi tempore quæque.

Hæc numerum nunquam (prohibet nam sensus) habebunt
Pluralem ; cœnum, līmus, *sic* trītĭcum, *et* aurum,
Argentum, *et paria ; his* pietas *addenda,* pŭdor*que,*
Et sĭtis, *atque* fāmes, infantia, *firma* juventus,
Atque sĕnecta *gravis, vel (vox magis apta)* sĕnectus,
Ver, vesper, lētum, spĕcĭmen, victus*que*, sŭpellex*que*,
Et vīrus, sanguis, plebs, *atque ignobile* vulgus ;
Cum paucis aliis ; sic nomina propria cuncta.

NOUNS defective in the Singular Number.

Mascula sunt tantùm numero contenta secundo,
Mānes, mājōres, cancelli, lībĕri, *et* antes,
Prīmōres, prŏcĕres, fasti *simul, atque* mĭnōres,
Infĕri, *item* Sŭpĕri, lĕmŭres, *quibus adde* Pĕnātes,
Et loca plurali, quales Găbĭi*que*, Lŏcri*que*,
Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.
Hæc sunt fœminei generis, numerique secundi;
Exŭviæ, phălĕræ, grātes, *et* ĭneptiæ, *et* īdus,
Blandĭtiæ, induciæ; *simul* insĭdiæ*que*, mĭnæ*que*,
Excŭbiæ, nōnæ, nūgæ, trīcæ*que*, călendæ,
Quisquĭliæ, thermæ, cūnæ, dīræ, exĕquiæ*que*,
Fēriæ, *et* infĕriæ; *sic* prīmĭtiæ*que*, plăgæ*que*,
Dēlĭciæ, tĕnĕbræ*que*, *et* valvæ, dīvĭtiæ*que*,
Nuptiæ *item, et* lactes: *addantur* Thēbæ *et* Athēnæ;
Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.
Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur;
Mœnia, *cum* tesquis, præcordia, lustra *ferarum*,
Arma, măpālia; *sic* bellāria, mūnia, castra:
Funus justa *petit, petit et* sponsālia *virgo;*
Rostra *disertus amat, puerique* crĕpundia *gestant,*
Infantesque colunt cūnābŭla: *consulit* exta
Augur, sacra piæ connectunt serta puellæ.
Festa deúm poterunt, ceu Bacchānālia, *jungi:*
Quòd si plura leges, licet hâc quoque classe reponas.

NOUNS declined after both the second and fourth Declensions.

Invenies porro tu nomina pauca secundæ
Quosdam etiam casus, lector, sumentia quartæ,
Atque is *præcipuè, atque* e *dedignantia fines,*
Ut laurus, *necnon* fīcus, dŏmus, *altaque* pīnus,
Et cŏlus, *et* cornus, *vivisque invisa* cupressus.

OF THE

PERFECT TENSE, AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

Of the Perfect Tense of simple Verbs.

I. The First Conjugation.

As *in præsenti perfectum format in* avi,
Ut no nas nāvi, vŏcĭto vŏcĭtas vŏcĭtavi;
Deme lăvo lāvi, jŭvo jūvi; *quin* cŭbo *semper*
Dat cŭbui, sĕco *dat* sĕcui, mĭcui mĭco *reddit;*
Sic frĭco *dat* frĭcui, dŏmo *dat* dŏmui, *a* sŏno *semper*
Formatur sŏnui, tŏnui*que* tŏno *generabit;*
Adde crĕpo *tibi quod* crĕpui, vĕto *quod* vĕtui *dat;*
Interdum nĕco *dat* necui, *plerumque* necavi.
Sæpius applicui *dabit* applĭco, *rarius* -avi, *at*
Supplĭco, multĭplĭco, *semper formantur in* āvi:
Quippe dĕdi do das, sto stas *formare* stĕti *vult.*

II. The Second Conjugation.

Es *in præsenti perfectum format* ui *dans;*
Ut nĭgreo nĭgres nĭgrui, mŏneo mŏnui *dat,*
Et geminum fugiens u, langueo langui *habebit.*
Sed multa ingenuus puer excipienda videbit:
Fit veo vi, *ut* mŏveo mōvi, căveo *quoque* cāvi;
Ferveo *item* fervi, *sed sæpe et* fervui *habebit.*
Dat fleo fles flēvi, neo nēvi, dēleo *format*
Dēlēvi; exŏleo *et verbum simile omne dat* -evi,
Compleo complēvi *format*, rĕpleo*que* rĕplēvi.
Dat cieo cīvi, *sed raro preteritum exstat.*
Plurima sunt quorum perfectum desinit in si,
Ut jŭbeo jussi, maneo mansi, ardeo *et* arsi,
Mulceo mulsi, suadeo suasi, rīdeo risi;
Hæreo *sic* hæsi *formabit*, torqueo torsi.
L *vel* r *ante* geo *si stet*, geo *vertitur in* si;
Urgeo *ut* ursi, mulgeo mulsi, fulgeo fulsi.

In deo *sunt etiam quæ* di *dent,* prandeo prandi,
Et vĭdeo, sĕdeo, assĭdeo, *sic* strīdeo strīdi:
Quatuor in xi *formantur, sic* frīgeo frixi,
Augeo *et* auxi, lūceo lūgeo *habent quoque* luxi.
Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima,
Pendeo *nayŋque* pĕpendi, mordeo *vultque* mŏmordi,
Spondeo spospondi, *vult* tondeo *habere* tŏtondi.
Passivi formam solam tria verba sequuntur,
Gaudeo gāvīsus, sŏlĭtus sŏleo, audeo *et* ausus.
Perfecto quin pauca carent, ut mœreo *monstrat,*
Atque ăveo, *atque* hĕbeo, scăteo, vĕgeo, immĭneo*que;*
Atque aliæ voces, quas usus rite docebit.

III. The Third Conjugation.

Tertia præteritum formabit ut hîc manifestum:
Bo *fit* psi, scrībo *ceu* scripsi, *sed* bĭbo, lambo,
Et scăbo, bi *faciunt; quin* occumbo occŭbui *dat.*
Co *fit* xi, *ut* dīco dixi, *sed* parco pĕperci,
Et vinco vīci, *vetus* īco *sic facit* ici.
Sco *fit* vi, *ut* pasco pāvi; *attamen inde profectum*
Compesco *format* compescui; *et adjice* disco,
Quod dĭdĭci *semper format,* posco*que* pŏposci.
Simplicium formam verba inceptiva sequuntur,
Nam căleo căluī *format,* căluī*que* călesco.
Perfectum jactant nullum glisco *atque* fătisco,
Cum paucis aliis a nomine ritè profectis.
Do *fit* si, *ut* claudo clausi, cĕdo *geminans* s
Dat cessi; di *pauca dabunt, ut* scando, prehendo,
Accendo, cūdo, mando, dēfendo, ĕdo, pando,
Et strīdo, sīdo; findo *et* fundo *abjiciunt* n,
Inde fĭdi, fūdi; *rarum dat* rūdo rŭdivi;
Quinetiam paucis geminatur syllaba prima,
Pendo pĕpendi, tendo tĕtendi, cædo cĕcīdi,
Et căndo *dat* cĕcĭdi, tundo tŭtŭdi; *ultima vero*
Plerumque in natis a do *geminatur, ut* ēdo,
Abdo, condo -dĭdi, reddo*que et cætera formant;*
Abscondo *tamen* abscondi *formare videbis.*

Passivi formam fīdo sum fīsus *habebit.*
Go *fit* xi, *ut* jungo junxi; *sed* r *antè* go *vult* si,
Ut spargo sparsi; lĕgo lēgi, *et* ăgo *facit* ēgi,
Et frango frēgi; pango *pro fīgere* panxi,
(*Inde tamen composta dabunt semper tibi* -pēgi)
Cùm cernis pĕpĭgi, *est præsens plerumque* paciscor.
Dat tango tĕtĭgi, pŭpŭgi *dabit ordine* pungo,
Sed punxi *compŏsta; carent perfecto* ambĭgo, vergo.
Guo, *ceu* restinguo restinxi, xi *tibi format.*
Ho *fit* xi, traho *quod* traxi *docet, et* veho vexi.
Lo *fit* ui, cŏlo *ceu* colui; psallo *excipe* psalli;
Excello *legem sequitur, sed* percŭli *habebit*
Percello; pĕpŭli *dat* pello, fallo fĕfelli,
Dat vello velli *tibi sæpius, est ubi* vulsi.
Mo *fit* mpsi, cōmo *ceu* compsi; *at* ĕmo *facit* ēmi;
Deinde vŏmo*que* frĕmo*que* gĕmo*que* trĕmo*que sequuntur,*
Quæ per ui *perfecta dabunt, dabit et* prĕmo pressi.
No *fit* vi, sĭno *ceu* sivi, *quin ordine* cerno
Mutato crēvi; *sic* sperno; sterno*que* stravi,
Gigno, pōno, căno, gĕntui, pŏsui, cĕcĭni *dant;*
Cujus ui *compŏsta, ut* concĭno concĭnui, *dant.*
Po *fit* psi, *ut* sculpo sculpsi, carpo *quoque* carpsi;
Sed rumpo *semper* rūpi, strĕpui strepo *format.*
Quo *fit* xi, cŏquo *ceu* coxi, linquo *excipe* liqui.
Ro *fit* si, *sæpe* s *geminato, quod* gĕro *monstrat,*
Dans gessi; tĕro *dat* trīvi, curro*que* cŭcurri;
Quæro quæsīvi, *neque enim* fĕro *prætereatur,*
Quod tŭli *habet;* sĕro *dat* sēvi, *compŏsta sed ejus*
Et -sevi *et* -sĕrui *dant,* insĕro, consĕro, *formâ*
Mutatâ ad sensum, -sĕrui *sed* dēsĕro *tantum,*
Assĕro *item formant; nullum* fūro *præteritum dat.*
So *fit* si, *ut* vīso visi, pinso *adjice* pinsi,
Pinsui *item;* depso *quoque* depsui; *at omne dat* -esso
-essīvi, *ut probat* arcesso, incesso, *atque* lăcesso.
To *fit* ti, *ut* verto verti; *sic ordine verso,*
Obstĭti *ab* obsisto *fluit, adde* insisto, rĕsisto;
Dat mitto mīsi, pĕto *vult formare* pĕtivi,
Sterto stertui *habet,* mĕto messui: *ab* -ecto *fit* -exi,

Ut flecto flexi; necto *dat* nexui, *habetque*
Nexi, *sic* pecto *dat* pexui, *habet quoque* pexi.
Vo *fit* vi, *ut* volvo volvi, vivo *excipe* vixi.
Xo xui *habet,* texo *ut monstrat, quod* texui *habebit.*
Fit cio ci, *ui* făcio fēci, jăcio *quoque* jēci;
Allĭcio allexi, ēlĭcio ēlĭcui *tibi format.*
Aspĭcio aspexi, *sic* conspĭcio, inspĭcio*que.*
Fit dio di, *ut* fŏdio fōdi; gio, *eeu* fŭgio, -gi.
Fit pio pi, *ut* căpio cēpi; cŭpio *ecce* cŭpivi,
Et răpio răpui, săpio săpui *atque* săpivi.
Dat părio pĕpĕri; *dat* concŭtio concussi.
Denique uo *fit* ui, *ut* stătuo stătui; pluo plūvi
Format, sive plui; struo *sed* struxi, fluo fluxi.
Compositum simplex sequitur; sed syllaba semper
Quam simplex geminat compŏsto non geminatur.

IV. The Fourth Conjugation.

Quarta dat is ivi, *ut monstrat* scio scis *tibi* scīvi;
Excipias vĕnio *dans* vēni, raucio rausi,
Haurio *item* hausi, farcio farci, fulcio fulsi,
Sarcio sarci, sentio sensi, sēpio sepsi,
Sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi; *tum tria verba*
Formantur per ui; sălio, apĕrio, opĕrio*que,*
In ri compĕrio -rio *mutat,* repĕrio*que,*
Perfectum præbent fĕrio *atque* sŭperbio *nullum.*

V. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E.*

Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in e *mutant:*
Damno, lacto, săcro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fătiscor,
Cando *vetus,* capto, jacto, pătior, grădior*que,*
Partio, carpo, pătro, scando, *sic* farcio, spargo.

VI. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I.*

Hæc hăbeo, lăteo, sălio, stătuo, căado, lædo,
Tango, căno, plăceo, tĕneo, *sic* cædo, cecīdi,
Quæro, ĕgeo, fāteor, tăceo, săpio, răpio*que,*

Si componantur, vocalem primam in i *mutant,*
Ut răpio, erĭpio ; *sed verbi simplicis usum*
Hæc duo, complăceo *cum* perplăceo, *benè servant.*
Composita à verbis calco, salto, a *per* u *mutant ;*
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, rĕsulto.
Composita à claudo, quatio, lavo, *rejiciunt* a :
Id docet, à claudo, occludo, excludo ; *à* quatio*que,*
Percutio, excutio ; *à* lavo, proluo, diluo, *nata ;*
Plaudo au *mutat in* o, *quod* displōdo *tibi monstrat.*

VII. Compound Verbs which change the Vowel of the Present Tense into *I*, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

Hæc si componas, ăgo, ĕmo, sĕdeo, rĕgo, frango,
Et căpio, jăcio, lăcio, spĕcio, prĕmo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in i *sibi mutant,*
Præteriti nunquam ; ceu frango, rĕfringo rĕfrēgi ;
A căpio, incĭpio incēpi. *Sed pauca notentur ;*
Namque suum simplex pĕrăgo *sequitur,* sătăgo*que ;*
Atque ab ăgo, dēgo *dat* dēgi, cōgŏ coēgi ;
A rĕgo, *sic* pergo perrexi ; *vult quoque* surgo
Surrexi ; *mediâ præsentis syllabâ ademptâ.*
Composita à pango *retinent* a *quatuor ista :*
Dēpango, oppango, circumpango, *atque* rĕpango.
Nil variat făcio, *nisi præposito præeunte :*
Id docet olfăcio, *cum* calfăcio, inficio*que.*
A lĕgo *nata,* re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, *præeunte,*
Præsentis servant vocalem ; in i *cætera mutant ;*
De quibus hæc, intellĭgo, dīlĭgo, neglĭgo, *tantum*
Præteritum lexi *faciunt ; reliqua omnia* legi.

VIII. Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.
Perfectum unum in bi, bĭbĭtum *formare* bĭbi *vult.*
Ci *fit* ctum, *ut* vīci victum *testatur, et* īci
Dans ictum, fēci factum, jēci *quoque* jactum.
Di *fit* sum, *ut* vīdi vīsum : *quædam geminant* s ;
Ut pandi passum, sēdi sessum, *adde* scĭdi, *quod*
Dat scissum, *atque* fĭdi fissum, fōdi *quoque* fossum.

Syllaba non ullis geminatur prima supinis ;
Idque tŏtondi *dans* tonsum *docet, atque* cecĭdi
Quod cæsum, *et* cecĭdi *quod dat* casum, *atque* tĕtendi
Quod tensum *et* tentum, tŭtŭdi tunsum, *atque* dĕdi *quod*
Jure dătum *poscit ; sic quot nascuntur ab illo,*
Addĭdi *ut* addĭtum *habet ;* morsum *vult atque* momordi.
Gi *fit* ctum, *ut* lĕgi lectum, pĕgi pĕpĭgique
Dant pactum, frĕgi fractum, tĕtĭgi *quoque* tactum,
Egi actum, pŭpŭgi punctum ; fŭgi fŭgĭtum *dat.*
Li *fit* sum, *ut* pĕpŭli pulsum, *sic ritc* fĕfelli
Falsum ; percŭli *habet* perculsum ; *neve* tŭli *te*
Aufugiat, semper cui lātum *venit in usum.*
Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum *sumunt, velut hîc manifestum* ;
Emi emptum, vēni ventum, cĕcĭni *à* căno cantum,
A căpio cēpi captum, cœpi *quoque* cœptum ;
A rumpo rūpi ruptum, lĭqui *quoque* lictum.
Ri *fit* sum, *ut* verri versum ; pĕpĕri *excipe* partum.
Si *fit* sum, *ut* vīsi visum ; *quin* ss *geminato,*
Mīsi *formabit* missum, fulsi *excipe* fultum,
Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi *quoque* fartum,
Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi *sibi* tortum
Vindicat ; indulsi *sic* indultum *tibi format.*
Psi *fit* ptum, *ut* scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi *quoque* sculptum.
Ti *vult* sum, *ut* verti versum, *formare ; supinum*
Cùm stĭti *habet,* stătum *erit, sed vix reperire valebis.*
Vi *fit* tum, *ut* flāvi flātum ; pāvi *excipe* pastum :
Dat lāvi lōtum, *interdum* lautum *atque* lăvātum,
Pōtāvi pōtum, vēnīvi *à* vĕnĕŏ vēnum ;
Dat fāvi fautum, cāvi cautum : *à* sĕrŏ sēvi
Formes rite sătum, sĕpĕlīvi *disce* sĕpultum,
Et singultivi singultum *semper habebit :*
Solvi *à* solvo sŏlūtum, volvi *à* volvo vŏlūtum.
Quod dat ui *dat* ĭtum, *ut* dŏmui dŏmĭtum : *excipe quodvis*
Verbum in uo, *quia semper* ui *formabit in* ūtum ;
Exui *ut* exūtum : *à* ruo *deme* rui ruĭtum *dans :*
Vult sĕcui sectum, nĕcui nectum, frĭcui*que*
Frictum, miscui *item* mistum, dŏcui *quoque* doctum,

Torrui *habet* tostum, contentum contĭnui*que;*
Adjice consŭlui consultum, ălui altum ălĭtum*que;*
Sic sălui saltum, cŏlui occŭlui *quoque* cultum;
Pinsui *habet* pistum, răpui raptum, sĕrui*que*
A sĕro *vult* sertum; *sic* texui *habet quoque* textum.
Censui *habet* censum, messum *quoque* messui *habebit,*
Nexui *item* nexum, *sic* pexui *habet quoque* pexum,
Xi *fit* ctum, *ut* vinxi vinctum: *quædam abjiciunt* n:
Ut finxi fictum *semper dabit, adjice* pinxi
Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi *quoque* rictum:
Xum, flexi, plexi, fixi, *dant; et* fluo fluxum.

IX. Of the Supines of Compound Verbs.

Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.
Composita à tunsum, *demptâ* n, tusum: *à* ruitum *fit.*
I *mediâ demptâ* rŭtum; *et à* saltum *quoque* sultum;
A sero, *quando* sătum *format, composta* sĭtum *dant.*
Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a *per* e *mutant;*
Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *adjice* fartum.
A nosco *tantùm duo* cognĭtum *et* agnĭtum *habentur;*
Cætera dant nōtum: *nullo est jam* noscĭtum *in usu.*

X. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in *Or.*

Verba in or *admittunt ex posteriore supino*
Præteritum, verso u *per* us, *et* sum *consociato*
Vel fui; *ut à* lectu, lectus sum *vel* fui. *At horum*
Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum:
Nam lābor lapsus; pătior *dat* passus, *et ejus*
Natum perpĕtior perpessus; *dat* făteor*que*
Fassus, confĭteor confessus; *dat* grădior*que*
Gressus, *dat* mensus sum mētior, ūtor *et* ūsus.
Pro texo ordītus, *pro incepto habet* ordior orsus,
Nītor nīsus *vel* nixus sum, ulciscor *et* ultus,
Irascor *simul* īratus, reor *atque* rătus sum,
Oblīviscor *vult* oblītus sum, fruor *optat*
Fructus *vel* fruĭtus: mĭsĕrēri *iunge* mĭsertus,

Atque -ĭtus ; *à* tuor *et* tueor tūtus tuĭtus*que* ;
A lŏquor *adde* lŏcūtus, *et à* sĕquor *adde* secūtus.
Expĕrior *facit* expertus ; *formare* păciscor
Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, ăpiscor,
Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum ; *unde* ădĭpiscor
ădeptus.
Junge quĕror questus, prŏfĭciscor *junge* prŏfectus,
Expergiscor sum experrectus ; *et hæc quoque*, comminiscor commentus, nascor nātus, mŏrior*que*
Mortuus, *atque* ŏrior, *quod præteritum facit* ortus.
Perfecto mĕdeor, vescor, lĭquor*que carebunt*,
Sic quoque diffĭteor, *sic* ringor, *sic* rĕmĭniscor.

XI. Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense both in the Active and Passive Voice.

Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc :
Nūbo nupsi nupta*que* sum ; plăceo plăcui *dat*
Et plăcĭtus ; lĭbet *et* lĭbuit lĭbĭtum ; lĭcet *adde*,
Quod lĭcuit lĭcĭtum ; tædet, *quod* tæduit, *et dat*
Pertæsum ; *adde* pŭdet, *faciens* pŭduit pŭditum*que* ;
Atque pĭget, *tibi quod format* pĭguit pĭgĭtum*que*.

XII. Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.

Hæc rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum :
Lambo, mĭco micui, rūdo, scăbo, parco pĕperci,
Dispesco, posco, compesco, *atque adjice* disco ;
Dĕgo, ango, sūgo, lingo, ningo, sătăg*oque*,
Psallo, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, trĕmo, strīdeo, strīdo,
Flāveo, līveo, ăvet, păveo, connīveo, fervet :
A nuo *compositum*, *ut* rĕnuo : *à* cădo, *ut* accĭdo ; *prætet*
Occĭdo, *quod facit* occāsum, rĕcĭdo*que* rĕcāsum :
Respuo, *sic* mĕtuo, luo, frīgeo, calveo, sterto,
Sic etiam tĭmeo : *sic* lūceo, *et* arceo, *cujus*
Composita -ercĭtum *habent : sic a* gruo, *ut* ingruo, *nata* ;
Et quæcunque in ui *formantur neutra secundæ :*
Excipias ŏleo, dŏleo, plăceo, tăceo*que*,
Pāreo, *item* căreo, nŏceo, jăceo, lăteo*que*,
Et văleo, căleo ; *gaudent hæc namque supino*.

SYNTAXIS:

OR,

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

Nominativus et Verbum.

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

Ego loquor.
Homines audiunt.

2. Nominativus pronominum omittitur, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ: ut,

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis. Cic.
Auditis, an me ludit amabilis
Insania? Audire et videor pios
Errare per lucos. Hor.
Possunt quia posse videntur. Virg.

3. Aliquando verbum infinitivi modi usurpatur pro nominativo vel pro accusativo casu nominis: ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros. Ovid.
Quod crimen dicis, præter amâsse, meam? Ovid.

4. Cùm duo sunt nomina diversarum personarum, verbum cum personâ digniore concordat:* ut,

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valemus. Cic.

5. Cùm duo aut plura nomina singularis numeri unum verbum sequitur, plerumque in plurali ponitur, si

* Apud Latinos prima persona dignissima est, et genus masculinum.

de *animantibus* agitur; si de *rebus*, vel in plurali vel in singulari: ut,

Apud Regillum Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt. Cic.

Cùm tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est. Cic.

Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt. Cic.

6. Cùm nomen singularis numeri multitudinem indicat, verbo plurali sæpe jungitur: ut,

Atria turba tenent, veniunt leve vulgus, euntque. Ov.
Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt. Cæs.

(*a*) Sic et adverbium *partim* cum genitivo plurali nominis, ceu nomen ipsum, aliquando usurpatur: ut,

Partim eorum timidi sunt, partim à republicâ aversi. Cic.
Partim eorum ficta aperte, partim temere effutita sunt. Cic.

7. Verbum inter duos nominativos ejusdem personæ sed diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest, sed cum posteriore ferè concordat: ut,

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est. Ter.
Pectus quoque robora fiunt. Ovid.
Omnia pontus erant. Ovid.

8. Verba dicendi, audiendi, sciendi, putandi, et similia, et verbum *sum* pro nominativo accusativus sequitur, verbo sequente infinitivo: ut,

Audivit nos venire. Cic.
Scribit confectum esse bellum. Cic.
Fama est, Enceladum urgeri mole hâc. Virg.

(*a*) Verba sperandi et promittendi infinitivus modus futuri temporis plerumque sequitur: ut,

Hæc promitto me esse observaturum. Cic.
Spero fore ut contingat id nobis. Cic.

CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

Substantivum et Adjectivum.

9. Adjectiva, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

Rara avis in terris nigroque simillima cygno. Juv.

10. Cùm verbum infinitivi modi, aut sententiæ pars pro substantivo usurpatur, neutrius generis habetur: ut,
Humanum est irasci.

11. Cùm plura sunt substantiva diversorum generum, adjectivum cum digniore genere concordat, si de *animantibus* agitur, et si in numero plurali ponitur; ut,
Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.

12. Si vero de *rebus* agitur, adjectivum sæpè in neutro genere ponitur: ut,
Secundæ res, honores, imperia, victoriæ, fortuita sunt. Cic.

(*a*) Interdum adjectivum cum proximo substantivo concordat, cujuscunque generis sit, præsertim cùm in singulari numero ponitur: ut,
Animus, et consilium, et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus. Cic.

13. Adjectivum aliquando concordat cum substantivo quod significatur, non cum eo quod exprimitur: ut,
Thracum auxilia, (i. e. *Thraces auxiliantes*) *cum pars* (i. e. *aliqui ex iis*) *munitionibus adjacerent, cæsi sunt.* Tac.

14. Aliquando nullum substantivum exprimitur, sed adjectivum pro substantivo usurpatur: ut,
Mira loquor. Ovid.
Multi pro patriâ mortem libenter oppetierunt. Cic.

CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Relativum et Antecedens.

15. Relativum cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ: ut,
Ego sum ille consul qui Romam servavi.
Contemnimus hominem qui amat mendacia.

16. Quoniam relativum adjectivum est, easdem de genere leges quas adjectivum sequitur: ut,

Eæ fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit. Cic.
Duo importuna prodigia (i. e. *viri prodigiosi sceleris*) *quos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat.* Cic.
Ubi est illud scelus qui me perdidit? Ter.

17. Aliquando sententia aut pars sententiæ ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum. Ter.

18. Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, sæpè cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur. Cic.

(*a*) Relativum sæpe ponitur Latine, ubi in nostro sermone pronomine cum conjunctione utimur: ut,

Hoc si scisses, pater, cujus (i. e. *ejus enim*, vel *tantæ enim*) *pietatis es, nemo te antecessisset.* Quint.
Et tamen in cœlo, quæ (i. e. *tanta enim*) *jam patientia nostra est,*
Spernimur. Ovid.
Pater tuus si viveret, quâ severitate (i. e. *tantâ enim*) *fuit, tu profecto non viveres.* Cic.
Hoc jussit, quod (i. e. *sed illud*) *si fecissem, omnia perdidissem.*

19. Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur: ut,

Vestrâ, qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest. Cic.

(*a*) Relativum, cùm ad nomen multitudinis refertur, aliquando in plurali ponitur: ut,

Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Cæs.

20. Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

Te peto quem mervi. Ovid.
Cujus numen adoro.

(*a*) Cùm relativum superlativo adjungitur, superlativum in eodem sententiæ membro quo relativum ponitur: ut,

Themistocles servum quem fidelissimum habuit ad Xerxem misit. Cor. Nep.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

SUBSTANTIVA.

21. Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum. Ovid.

22. Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit. Juv.

23. Adjectivum in neutro genere pro substantivo positum, genitivum postulat: ut,

Hoc ad te literarum dedi. Cic.

Ad ultimum inopiæ venerant. Liv.

Ferimur per opaca locorum. Virg.

24. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantùm, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

Ventum erat ad Vestæ, (i. e. *ad templum Vestæ.*) Hor.

Hasdrubal Gisgonis, (i. e. *Gisgonis filius.*) Liv.

25. Substantivum qualitatem denotans, adjunoto adjectivo, in genitivo vel in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Titus facilitatis tantæ fuit, ut nemini quicquam negaret. Eutr.

Agesilaus staturâ fuit humili et corpore exiguo. Corn. Nep.

(*a*) Substantiva à verbis derivata interdum eosdem casus post se admittunt, quos verba à quibus derivantur exigunt: ut,

Domum reditionis spe sublatâ. Cæs.

Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus. Cic.

26. *Opus* et *usus* ablativum rei, cum dativo personæ, exigunt: ut,

Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est. Cic.

Pecuniam quâ nihil sibi esset usus ab iis non accepit. Gell.

(*a*) *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, aliquando poni videtur: ut,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. Cic.

ADJECTIVA.

Genitivus post Adjectivum.

27. Adjectiva, vel participia pro adjectivis posita, quæ cupidinem, scientiam, memoriam, timorem, diligentiam, participationem, atque iis contraria, significant, cum plurimis aliis quæ qualitatem vel motum aliquem animi denotant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Pythagoras sapientiæ studiosos appellavit philosophos. Cic.

Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet. Ovid.

Venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ. Ovid.

Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ. Virg.

Romani appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras gentes fuerunt. Cic.

Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procellæ. Hor.

Vir omnis officii diligentissimus. Cic.

Cæteræ habere domi fortunarum omnium participem possunt. Cic.

Sæpe potens voti redit anus. Ovid.

(*a*) Ex his *particeps* interdum dativo personæ jungitur: ut,

Mater in plerisque ruris operibus marito particeps. Quint.

(*b*) *Conscius* genitivum rei, dativum personæ, postulat; interdum etiam dativo rei jungitur, personâ subauditâ: ut,

Conscius sibi tanti sceleris. Sall.

Huic facinori tanto (i. e. *illi quæ hoc facinus admiserit*) *mens tua conscia esse non debuit.* Cic.

28. Adjectiva quæ copiam egestatemve significant, genitivum, interdum etiam ablativum, exigunt: ut,

Dives equûm, dives pictaï vestis et auri. Virg.

Dives agris, dives positis in fœnore nummis. Hor.

Opis non indiga nostræ. Virg.
Plena errorum sunt omnia. Cic.
Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers. Cic.

29. Adjectiva quæ liberalitatem vel contrarium significant, genitivum exigunt: ut,
Liberalis pecuniæ. Sall.
Veteris non parcus aceti. Hor.

30. *Proprius, superstes, communis,* cum paucis aliis, genitivum, interdum etiam dativum, admittunt: ut,
Populi Romani propria est libertas.
Aliorum superstites sumus. Tac.
Hoc commune est potentiæ cupidorum cum otiosis. Cic.
Omni ætati mors est communis.
Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit. Tac.

(*a.*) *Communis* verò pronomini personali nunquam nisi in dativo jungitur: ut,
Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

31. *Alienus* genitivo, vel dativo, vel ablativo, vel ablativo cum præpositione, jungitur: ut,
Hoc alienum esse suæ dignitatis censet. Cic.
Alienus ambitioni. Sen.
Fraus homine alienissima est. Cic.
Non alienus à Scævolæ studiis. Cic.

32. Adjectiva quæ crimen vel contrarium significant, genitivo junguntur: ut,
Regulus collegam, ut noxium conjurationis, ad disquisitionem trahebat. Tac.
Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus. Hor.

33. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* genitivum exigunt: ut,
Tempus edax rerum.

34. Adjectiva partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa, et adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum exigunt: ut,
Utrum horum mavis accipe.
Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.

Manuum fortior est dextra.
Digitorum medius est longissimus.
Sequimur te, sancte Deorum. Virg.

(*a*) Usurpantur et cum his præpositionibus, *de, ex, in, inter*: ut,

Nam Deus, è vobis alter es, alter eris. Ovid.
Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit. Cic.
Solus de superis qui tua terga vides. Ovid.
Inter mille rates tua sit millesima puppis. Ovid.

Dativus post Adjectivum.

35. Adjectiva, quibus commodum, similitudo, aut iis similia vel contraria, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris. Juv.
Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti. Mart.
Patri similis. Cic.
Virtus fructuosa aliis, ipsi laboriosa. Cic.
Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo. Ovid
Socrates judicibus non supplex fuit. Cic.
Dis carus ipsis. Hor.
Est finitimus oratori poeta.

(*a*) Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, et adjectivum *affinis*, etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

Qui mortem leviorem faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse. Cic.
Affinis hujus culpæ. Cic.

36. *Natus, habilis, commodus, utilis, aptus,* cum quibusdam aliis, etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur: ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Cic.
Utilis ad eam rem.

37. Adjectiva verbalia in *bilis*, accepta passivè, dativum postulant: ut,

Nulli penetrabilis astro
Lucus iners. Stat.

38. Participia passivæ vocis dativum, vel ablativum cum præpositione, postulant: ut,

Primâ dicte mihi, summâ dicende Camœnâ,
Mœcenas. Hor.
Senex sapiens ab Apolline dictus.

Accusativus post Adjectivum.

39. Adjectiva magnitudinem significantia, accusativum exigunt: ut,

Fossa undecim pedes lata. Cic.

40. *Natus,* cùm ad temporis durationem refertur, accusativum exigit: ut,

Undeviginti annos natus. Cic.

41. Accusativus a poetis sæpe subjicitur adjectivis et participiis passivæ vocis, præsertim cùm pars affecta indicatur: ut,

Os humerosque Deo similis. Virg.
[*Flores*] *inscripti nomina regum.* Virg.
Stratus nunc viridi membra sub arbuto. Hor.

42. Accusativus sæpe in exclamationibus usurpatur, interjectione aliquâ, a quâ reverà regitur, subauditâ: ut,

Me cæcum (i. e. *O me cæcum*) *qui hæc ante non viderim!* Cic. [Vide infra, Reg. 154.]

Ablativus post Adjectivum.

43. Adjectiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, aut formam, aut modum rei: ut,

Scelere par est illi, industriâ inferior. Cic.
Trojanus origine Cæsar. Virg.

44. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, contentus, extorris, fretus,* cum adjectivis pretium significantibus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

Dignus es odio. Ter.
Mens est prædita motu sempiterno. Cic.
Sorte tuâ contentus abi.
Extorris agro Romano. Sall.

Otium gemmis venale nec auro.
Quod non opus est, asse carum est. Sen.

(*a.*) Horum nonnulla poeticè interdum genitivum admittunt: ut,
Magnorum indignus avorum. Virg.

(*b.*) *Fretus* interdum, sed raro, dativo jungitur: ut,
Multitudo hostium nulli rei præterquam numero freta fuit. Liv.

45. *Natus, satus, cretus,* et similia sine præpositione; *ortus, editus,* vel cum vel sine præpositione; ablativum exigunt: ut,
Nate Deâ. Virg.
Sate sanguine Divûm. Virg.
Hortamur fari quo sanguine cretus. Virg.
Anchisâ generate, Deûm certissima proles. Virg.
Venus, orta mari, mare præstat eunti. Ovid.
Te contenta marito,
Edita de magno flumine nympha fui. Ovid.

46. Comparativis subjicitur ablativus rei ad quam comparatio fiat, vel utraque res comparata in eodem casu ponitur, interpositâ conjunctione *quàm:* ut,
Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. Hor.
Melior utriorque est certa pax, quàm sperata victoria. Liv.

(*a.*) Cùm duo adjectiva vel adverbia inter se comparantur, et per *quàm* conjunguntur, in comparativo ambo ferè ponuntur: ut,
Publii Æmilii concio fuit verior quàm gratior populo. Liv.
Non timeo ne libentius hæc in illum evomere videar quàm verius. Cic.

(*b.*) Post *minus, plus, amplius,* et *longius, quàm* interdum omittitur, nihilominus substantivum quod sequitur non in ablativo ponitur: ut,
Si vos minus hodie decem plebis tribunos feceritis. Liv.
Cùm plus annum æger fuisset. Liv.
Dixit Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hybernis suis abfuisse. Cæs.

(*c.*) Aliquando subjiciuntur comparativis *quàm pro* casu substantivo, *quàm qui* vel *quàm ut* cum verbo: ut,

Prœlium atrocius quàm pro numero pugnantium editur. Liv.

Major sum quàm cui possit fortuna nocere. Ovid.
Flumen latius erat quàm ut tranare possent.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

47. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,* genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur: ut,

Languet desiderio tui.
Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo. Ov.
Imago nostri.

48. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* ponuntur cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,

Favet desiderio tuo.
Imago nostra, (i. e. *quam nos possidemus.*)

49. Pronomina possessiva hos genitivos post se interdum recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque,* et genitivos participiorum qui ad primitivum subaudítum referuntur: ut,

Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam. Cic.
Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.
Cùm mea nemo
Scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis. Hor.
De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis. Cic.
In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.
Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.
Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus. Cic.

50. *Sui* et *suus* reciproca sunt, id est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,

Sentit animus se vi suâ non alienâ moveri. Cic.
Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem. Cic.

51. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille, is,* fere sic distinguuntur; *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste,* eum qui apud te est; *ille,* eum qui ab utroque remotus est; *is,* eum de quo mentio fit.

52. Quum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius, refertur: ut,

Cæsar munificentiâ magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato: Ille mansuetudine clarus factus; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat. Sall.

(*a.*) Nonnunquam vero *hic* et *ille* mutatas vices habent: ut, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tuâ, illa in Deorum potestate est.* Liv.

53. *Idem* cópulativam vim sæpe habet: ut,
Nil liberale est quod non idem justum. Cic.
Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias. Cic.

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

Nominativus post Verbum.

54. Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo;* verba vocandi passiva, ut *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor,* et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor,* utrinque eosdem casus habent: ut,

Deus est mundi Creator.
Natura beatis
Omnibus esse dedit.
Ex nitido fit rusticus. Hor.
Opiferque per orbem
Dicor. Ovid.
Da mihi fallere, da justo sanctoque videri. Hor.

(*a.*) Item omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,
Pii orant taciti.
Malus pastor dormit supinus.

Genitivus post Verbum.

55. *Sum* et *fio* genitivum postulant, quoties significant possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,
Adolescentis est majores natu revereri. Cic.
Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt. Liv.

56. Verba accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum criminis vel pœnæ exigunt, accusativum personæ: ut,

Alterum ambitûs accusat. Cic.
Proditionis eum insimulabant. Cæs.
Octupli damnatus est. Cic.

57. Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, interdum (cùm de crimine agitur) cum præpositione *de:* ut,

Si in me iniquus es judex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine. Cic.
Non ob eam rem capite damnarer. Cic.
Licinium de aleâ condemnatum restituit. Cic.

(*a.*) *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo,* et adjectiva superlativa, non nisi in ablativo hujusmodi verbis junguntur: ut,

Accusas furti, an stupri? Utroque.
De plurimis simul accusaris.

58. Verba miserendi genitivum postulant, præter *miseror,* qui soli accusativo jungitur: ut,

Oro miserere laborum
Tantorum, miserere animi non digna ferentis. Virg.
O sola infandos Trojæ miserata labores. Virg.

59. Verba reminiscendi et obliviscendi genitivum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

Proprium est stultitiæ aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Cic.
Nec veterum memini lætorve malorum. Virg.
Flagitiorum suorum recordabitur. Cic.
Tu, C. Cæsar, oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias. Cic.
Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. Virg.
Si ritè audita recordor. Virg.

60. Verba admonendi genitivum rei exigunt, accusativum personæ; interdum ablativum rei cum præpositione *de;* interdum geminum accusativum: ut,

Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ. Sall.

Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum. Cic.
Unoquoque gradu de avaritiâ tuâ commonemur. Cic.
Illud me præclarè admones. Cic.

61. *Potior* aut genitivo aut ablativo jungitur: ut,
Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt. Sall.
Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troës arenâ. Virg.

Dativus post Verbum.

62. Omnia ferè verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cujus causâ aliquid fit, aut in quam actio refertur: ut,
Sic nullum vobis tempus abibit iners. Ovid.
Laomedonti magna facta est injuria. Cic.
Pisistratus sibi non patriæ Megarenses vicit. Cic.
Hoc omnibus patet. Cic.
Quid voveat dulci nutricula majus alumno? Juv.
Appius mihi blanditur. Cic.
Civitas Romana parum olim vacabat liberalibus studiis. Cic.
Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca. Virg.
Consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ. Cic.
Medici timent ægris vini noxam. Plin.

(*a.*) Sed *delecto, juvo, lædo,* accusativum exigunt: ut,
Non omnes arbusta juvant. Virg.

63. Verba comparandi regunt dativum; interdum etiam accusativum vel ablativum, cum præpositionibus *inter* vel *cum*: ut,
Sic parvis componere magna solebam. Virg.
Hominem cum homine, rem cum re comparate Cic.
Partes honestatis inter se comparemus. Cic.

64. Verba dandi, reddendi, et contraria, regunt dativum: ut,
Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli. Mart.
Quis te mihi casus ademit? Ovid.
Æs alienum mihi numeravit. Cic.

ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL LIBRARY

65. Verba appropinquandi, adjungendi, et iis contraria, dativum exigunt: ut,

Nescit equo rudis hærere ingenuus puer. Hor.
Forti miscebat mella Falerno. Hor.
Currui jungit equos. Virg.
Paulum sepultæ distat inertiæ
Celata virtus: Eripe te moræ. Hor.

(*a.*) Quædam ex his composita cum præpositione *ad* accusativum cum *ad* admittunt; et interdum verba amovendi et distandi ablativum cum præpositione, vel (apud poetas) sine præpositione, admittunt: ut,

Hi ad summam aquam appropinquant. Cic.
Sestos Abydenâ separat urbe fretum. Ovid.
A malis igitur mors nos abducit, non à bonis. Cic.
Quantum distet ab Inacho Codrus narras. Hor.

66. Verba imperandi, parendi, resistendi, et dicendi, regunt dativum: ut,

Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique. Hor.
Dic mihi, quid feci? Ovid.
Quæ tibi promitto me sanctissimè esse observaturum. Cic.
Tempore paret equus lentis animosus habenis. Ovid.
Omnibus ejus dictis repugnavi.

(*a.*) Excipe *rego, guberno, jubeo*, quæ accusativum; *tempero* et *moderor*, quæ vel dativum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.
Ille regit dictis animos. Virg.
Te hortor, ut omnia gubernes prudentiâ tuâ. Cic.
Sit censor, qui viros doceat moderari uxoribus. Cic.
Non voluptate sed officio consilia moderari decet. Cic.
Æolus ventorum temperat iras. Virg.
Vix temperavere animis. Liv.

67. Verba irascendi regunt dativum: Verba condonandi dativum personæ, accusativum culpæ, si ambo exprimuntur; si alterum tantùm, dativum: Verba minandi dativum personæ, accusativum rei: ut,

Adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam. Ter.
Homines omnia sibi ignoscunt. Sall.
Utrique mortem est minitatus. Cic.

68. Verba fidendi et iis contraria dativum exigunt: ut,
Vacuis committere venis nil nisi lene decet. Hor.
Diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum. Cic.

(*a.*) Interdum vero verba fidendi ablativo junguntur: ut,
Fortunæ stabilitate confidit. Cic.

69. Dativum fermè regunt verba composita cum his adverbiis, *benè, malè, satis;* et cum his præpositionibus, *ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re:* ut,
Dii tibi benefaciant. Ter.
Concionanti circumfundebatur multitudo. Liv.
Judices sibi constare, et superioribus convenire judiciis debuerant. Cic.
Campus interjacens Tiberi et mœnibus Romanis. Liv.
Omnibus ejus consiliis obstiti. Cic.
Vos est postponere natis
Ausa suis. Ovid.
Brutum copiis præfecit. Cic.
Ora ipsa oculis proponite. Cic.
Magnitudine animi potest repugnari fortunæ. Cic.
Superfuit patri. Liv.

(*a*) Nonnulla tamen ex his accusativum interdum regunt: ut,
Præstat ingenio alius alium. Quint.
Beatum est post mortem convenire eos, qui justè et cum fide vixerint. Cic.

70. Passivis verbis subjicitur interdum dativus agentis, interdum ablativus cum præpositione, (*Vid. Reg.* 78): ut,
Hoc in laboribus viventi non intelligitur. Cic.
Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. Hor.

71. *Sum,* cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum, alterum personæ, alterum rei: ut,
Exitio est avidis mare nautis. Hor.
Quinque cohortes castris præsidio reliquit. Cæs.
Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt. Cæs.

Accusativus post Verbum.

72. Verba transitiva exigunt accusativum: ut,
Arma virumque cano. Virg.
Mortem non deprecor, inquit. Virg.

73. Verba neutralia sæpe accusativum cognatæ significationis post se habent: ut,
Duram servit servitutem.
Nec vox hominem sonat; O Dea, certè. Virg.

(*a.*) Verba neutralia aliquando etiam accusativum regunt ejus rei, quæ causam significat: ut,
Id tibi succenseo. Cic.

74. Verba rogandi, docendi, celandi, cogendi, sæpe duplicem regunt accusativum: ut,
Tu modò posce Deos veniam. Virg.
Ea ne me celet consuefeci filium. Ter.
Quid nunc te, asine, literas dòceam? Cic.
Quid non mortalia pectora cogis
Auri sacra fames? Virg.

(*a.*) Sæpe etiam verba docendi per ellipsin ablativum admittunt: ut,
Socratem fidibus docuit nobilissimus fidicen (i. e. *fidibus ludere.*) Cic.

75. Quædam etiam verba motûs cum præpositionibus *ad, trans, circum, præter*, composita, duplicem regunt accusativum, quorum alter ad præpositionem refertur: ut,
Iberum copias trajecit. Liv.
Idem jusjurandum adigit Afranium. Cæs.

76. Verba quæ activâ voce duplicem regunt accusativum, et verba vestiendi, etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent: ut,
Posceris exta bovis.
Belgæ Rhenum transducuntur. Cæs.
Induiturque aures lentè gradientis aselli. Ovid.

Ablativus post Verbum.

77. Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum, significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis: ut,

Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis. Virg.
Miltiades summâ æquitate res Chersonesi constituit. Corn. Nep.
Victoriâ suâ gloriantur. Cæs.
Lacte vivûnt. Cæs.
Lepõre omnibus præstitit. Cic.
Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere, nos oportet. Cic.
Frumentum flumine Arari navibus subvexerat. Cæs.

78. Cùm nomen agentis sequitur verbum, in ablativo cum præpositione ponitur (*Vid. Reg.* 70): ut,
Pompeius à Cæsare victus est.

79. Verbis emendi, vendendi, æstimandi, plerumque subjicitur ablativus pretii: ut,
Multo sanguine Pœnis victoria stetit. Liv.
Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit. Plin.

(*a.*) Interdum subjicitur genitivus, voce *pretio* subauditâ: ut,
Nequicquam iis pensi est quid faciant. Liv.
Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt. Cic.

(*b.*) *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, plurimi,* cum paucis similibus, post hæc verba sæpe usurpantur: ut,
Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris. Cic.
Hephæstionem Alexander plurimi fecerat.

80. Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his contraria, ablativo junguntur: ut,
Amore abundas, Antipho. Ter.
Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit. Sall.
Te quibus mendaciis homines levissimi onerârunt? Cic.
Vela queror reditu, verba carere fide. Ov.
Pane egeo. Hor.

(*a.*) Sæpè etiam verba egendi et implendi genitivum admittunt: ut,
Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinæ. Virg.
Non tam artis indigent quàm laboris. Cic.

81. Verba abstinendi atque arcendi regunt ablativum, interdum cum præpositione, quæ quidem ante *personam* semper usurpatur: ut,

L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. Cic.
Te à quartanâ liberatum gaudeo. Cic.
Apud veteres Romanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur. Tac.
Tu Jupiter hunc à tuis aris, à tectis urbis arcebis. Cic.

(*a.*) Apud poetas (ad usum Græcorum) verba abstinendi aliquando genitivum admittunt: ut,

Abstineto,
Dixit, irarum calidæque rixæ. Hor.
Desine mollium
Tandem querelarum. Hor.

82. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto,* et composita, et *supersedeo,* ablativo junguntur: ut,

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis. Cic.
Hannibal, cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit. Flor.
Quid puer Ascanius, superatne et vescitur aurâ? Virg.
Haud equidem tali me dignor honore. Virg.
Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis. Hor.
Verborum multitudine supersedendum est. Cic.

83. *Pascor* et *nitor* ablativo, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

Floribus et victu pascuntur simplicis herbæ. Virg.
Pascitur in vivis Livor. Ov.
Purâ juvenis qui nititur hastâ. Virg.
In vitâ Pompeii nitebatur salus civitatis. Cic.

84. Ablativus absolutus dicitur quoties substantivum in ablativo cum participio construitur, vel adjectivo, (interdum etiam cum alio substantivo,) ut tempus vel modum, vel aliam rem comitantem, denotet: ut,

Archilochus regnante Romulo floruit. Cic.
Nihil de hâc re agi potest salvis legibus. Cic.
Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset. Cæs.
Me duce, tutus eris. Ov.

85. Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poeticè accusativus: ut,

Micat auribus et tremit artus. Virg.

(*a.*) Quædam usurpantur, (ad usum Græcorum, sed rarissimè) etiam cum genitivo: ut,

Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi. Plaut.

86. *Exsulo* ablativum, *veneo* ablativum cum præpositione, *vapulo* ablativum, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, admittit: ut,

Mente tamen, quæ sola loco non exsulat, utar. Ov.

Respondit se malle à cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire. Quint.

Testis rogatus est an ab reo fustibus vapulâsset. Quint.

Omnium sermonibus se sentiet vapulare. Cic.

VERBA INFINITA.

87. Verbis quibusdam, et participiis et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita: ut,

Dicere quæ puduit scribere jussit amor. Ov.

Jussus confundere fœdus. Virg.

Erat tum dignus amari. Virg.

88. Verba rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, et contraria, raro (nisi apud poetas) infinitivum post se habent, plerumque vero conjunctionem cum subjunctivo, (*Vid. Reg.* 133): ut,

Illud te oro et hortor, ut in munere tuo diligentissimus sis. Cic.

Moneo obtestorque, ne hos, qui tibi genere propinqui sunt, negligas. Cic.

Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis ædificaretur. Corn. Nep.

(*a.*) Ex his vero *jubeo* et *veto* etiam in pedestri sermone infinitivo sæpius junguntur: ut,

Hannibal Tarentinos sine armis convocari jussit. Liv.

89. Verba efficiendi conjunctio cum subjunctivo semper sequitur: ut,

Tu, quicquid indagâris de republicâ, facito ut sciam. Cic.

90. Verba accidendi et similia conjunctio cum subjunctivo plerumque sequitur: ut,

Persæpe evenit ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Cic.
Amicis quoniam satisfeci, reliquum est ut quomodo mihi consulam. Corn. Nep.

(*a.*) Sed *contingit* infinitivus sæpe sequitur: ut,
Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum. Hor.

91. Verba permittendi, optandi, cogendi, vel infinitivum, vel *ut* cum subjunctivo, admittunt (*Vid. Reg.* 133): ut,

Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur. Cic.
Natura non patitur ut aliorum spoliis nostras opes augeamus. Cic.
Permittes ipsis expendere numinibus, quid
Conveniat nobis. Juv.

92. *Oportet* et *necesse est* interdum infinitivum, sæpius subjunctivum, post se habent: ut,

Valeat possessor oportet. Hor.
Tanquam ita fieri non solum oporteret, sed etiam necesse esset. Cic.
Corpus mortale intereat necesse est.

93. Post verba orandi, imperandi, vel volendi, *ut* sæpe omittitur, verbum tamen in subjunctivo ponitur: ut,

Te pro amore nostro rogo atque oro, te colligas virumque præbeas. Cic.
Postero die rex edixit omnes armati coirent. Q. Curt.
Vellem Dî immortales fecissent ut vivo Ser. Sulpicio gratias ageremus. Cic.
Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quàm stulti cives laudent. Liv.

(*a.*) Sic post *cave* sæpe omittitur *ne*: ut,
Cave existimes me abjecisse curam reipublicæ. Cic.

94. Ponuntur interdum sola per ellipsin verba infinita: ut,

Hinc spargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma. Virg.
(Hîc subauditur *incipiebat.*)

GERUNDIA.

95. Gerundia in *di* eandem cum genitivis constructionem habent, et pendent à substantivis vel ab adjectivis, nunquam à verbis: ut,

Cecropiæ innatus apes amor urget habendi. Virg.
Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi. Virg.

96. Gerundia in *do* eandem cum dativis et ablativi constructionem habent: ut,

Illud ediscendo scribendoque commune est. Quinct.
Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo. Virg.

(*a.*) Præpositio *sine* nunquam cum gerundiis in *do* usurpatur. (*Vid. Reg.* 132.)

97. Gerundia in *dum* eandem cum accusativis constructionem habent, sed præpositionem præcedentem semper exigunt: ut,

Locus ad agendum amplissimus. Cic.
Mores puerorum se inter ludendum simplicius detegunt. Quinct.

98. Si verbum accusativum regit, gerundivum sæpius usurpatur quàm gerundium: ut,

Timotheus peritus fuit civitatis regendæ. Corn. Nep.
Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latrocinio est.

(*a.*) Usurpantur eodem modo *utor, fruor, fungor, potior:* ut,
Justitiæ fruendæ causâ videntur olim bene morati reges constituti. Cic.
Omnia bona ei utenda tradiderat. Cic.

99. Gerundivum in nominativo (et in accusativo, cùm verbum infinitivi modi adjungitur, vel subauditur) necessitatem, vel officium, vel possibilitatem indicat: ut,

Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Juv.
Diligentia præcipuè colenda est nobis, et semper adhibenda. Cic.
Eos à se observandos et colendos putabat. Cic.

SUPINA.

100. Supinum in *um* activam significationem habet, et sequitur verbum significans motum ad locum: ut,
Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. Ov.

101. Supinum in *u* passivam significationem habet, et sequitur adjectiva: ut,
Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

102. Verba quæ nominativum non habent, neque ultra tertiam personam singularem et infinitivum inflectuntur, impersonalia dicuntur: ut,
Hinc tonat, hinc missis abrumpitur ignibus æther. Ov.

103. Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; et his ablativis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ:* ut,
Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.
Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.

(*a.*) Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris*, et similia: ut,
Tanti refert honesta agere.

104. Verba impersonalia casus pro sensu regunt, more aliorum verborum: ut,
Oratorem irasci minimè decet. Cic.
Licuit Themistocli esse otioso. Cic.

105. His verbis *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad:* ut,
Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet? Ter.

106. *Decet, attinet*, et *spectat*, quamvis impersonalia dicuntur, nominativum sæpe habent, et in tertiâ personâ plurali sæpe inveniuntur: ut,
Candida pax homines, trux decet ira feras. Ovid.
Quæ nihil attinent. Ter.
Ea non ad religionem spectant. Cic.

107. His impersonalibus, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, pudet, piget,* subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

Malo me fortunæ pœniteat quàm victoriæ pudeat. Curt.

Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.

Eorum nos miseret. Cic.

Si non pertæsum thalami tædæque fuisset. Virg.

(*a.*) Interdum res exprimitur, vel verbo infinitivi modi, vel conjunctione *quòd* et verbo: ut,

Non me pudet fateri nescire quòd nesciam. Cic.

Pœnitet me quòd te offendi. Cic.

108. Pleraque passiva verba in impersonalia verti possunt in tertiâ personâ singulari, et dativum agentis vel ablativum cum præpositione post se admittunt (qui vero sæpius subauditur,) eum vero casum objecti quem verbum activum regit: ut,

Quo ruitis, generosa domus? Malè creditur hosti. Ovid.

In alium quendam locum ex his locis morte migratur. Cic.

DE TEMPORE.

109. Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo ponuntur: ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. Plin.

110. Quæ durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ponuntur: ut,

Hîc jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. Virg.

(*a.*) Interdum cùm ætas hominis significatur, genitivus usurpatur: ut,

Hamilcar secum in Hispaniam duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. Corn. Nep.

(*b.*) Interdum, sed perrarò, duratio temporis per ablativum significatur: ut,

Triginta annis vixit Panætius, posteaquam libros de officiis ediderat. Cic.

SPATIUM LOCI.

111. Spatium loci in accusativo ponitur, cùm motus significatur; in ablativo, cùm statio: ut,

Jam mille passus processeram. Liv.

Millibus passuum sex à Cæsaris castris concedit. Cæs.

(*a.*) Interdum vero accusativus usurpatur etiam cùm statio significatur: ut,

Mille ferè et quingentos passus castra ab urbe locat. Liv.

Dicimus etiam abest bidui, *ubi subauditur* itinere, *vel* iter.

NOMINA LOCORUM.

112. Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis et singularis numeri sit: ut,

Quid Romæ faciam? Juv.

(*a.*) Hi genitivi, *domi, humi, militiæ, belli,* nominum propriorum sequuntur formam: ut,

Præterea, quibuscunque rebus vel belli vel domi poterunt, rempublicam augeant. Cic.

Procumbit humi bos. Virg.

Unà semper militiæ et domi fuimus. Ter.

113. Verùm si oppidi nomen pluralis numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus an Argis. Hor.

Romæ Tibur amo, ventosus, Tibure Romam. Hor.

114. Verbis significantibus motum *ad locum* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

Atque aliquis, Doctas jam nunc eat, inquit, Athenas. Ovid.

(*a.*) Hanc constructionem sequuntur *domus* et *rus*: ut,

Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ. Virg.

Ego rus ibo.

115. Verbis significantibus motum *à loco* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,

Nisi ante Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.

(*a.*) Perrarò post verba motûs præpositiones ante nomina urbium inveniuntur: ut,

Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam. Cic.
Segesta ab Æneâ fugiente à Trojâ condita est. Cic.

(*b.*) Interdum etiam regionum nomina post verba motûs in accusativo vel ablativo pro sensu ponuntur, sine præpositione: ut,

Germanicus Ægyptum proficiscitur. Tac.
Dein Piso abire Syriâ statuit. Tac.

(*c.*) Apud poetas quodvis substantivum quod verbum motûs ad locum sequitur, in accusativo interdum ponitur: ut,

Speluncam Dido dux et Trojanus eandem
Deveniunt. Virg.
Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras. Ovid.

ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

116. ADVERBIA loci, *ubi, ubique, ubicunque, usquam, nusquam, huc, eo, quo,* et cætera, interdum genitivos *terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum,* et, cùm gradum significant, alios genitivos post se habent: ut,

Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium Romanorum est, ad communem libertatis causam pertinet. Cic.
Nescire videmini quo amentiæ progressi sitis. Liv.
Eo miseriarum venturus eram. Sall.

(*a.*) Sic post *tum, tunc,* genitivus *temporis* aliquando occurrit, sed non apud optimos auctores: ut,

Nihil tunc temporis amplius quàm flere poteram.

117. *Pridie* et *postridie* genitivum *diei,* et accusativum partium mensis, vel nominum festorum, post se admittunt: ut,

Pridie ejus diei venit in Senatum.
Pridie calendas abiit.

118. Adverbia quantitatis genitivum admittunt: ut,

Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum. Sall.

119. Quædam adverbia casus eosdem admittunt qui à vocibus, à quibus derivantur, exiguntur: ut,

Sulpicius Gallus omnium nobilium maximè Græcis literis studuit. Cic.

Exercitum habuit quàm proximè hostem. Cic.

120. *Ergo* genitivum post se habet: ut,
Donari virtutis ergo benevolentiæque. Cic.

121. *Procul* ablativo interdum jungitur: ut,
Multi suam rem benè gessere et publicam patriâ procul. Cic.

(*a.*) Apud poetas et serioris ævi scriptores, *clam*, *palam*, et *simul* ablativo junguntur; et aliquando *usque* cum accusativo vel ablativo: ut,
Clam uxore meâ et filio. Ter.
Simul his te, candide Furni.....dicere possum. Hor.
Corpora usque pedes carbaso velabant. Curt.

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,
Sŏcrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.
Nec scribit nec legit.
Occidit,
Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili. Hor.

(*a.*) Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliud poscat: ut,
Emi librum centussi et pluris.
Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.

123. Pro *quàm* post comparativum poetæ interdum usurpant *atque:* ut,
Arctius atque hederæ procera astringitur ilex. Hor.

124. Cùm comparatio significatur, sæpe usurpatur *tam*, respondente *quàm:* ut,
Vellem tam domestica ferre possem quàm ista contemnere. Cic.

125. Cùm significatur aliquid maximum esse quod fieri potest, sæpè usurpatur superlativus præcedente *quàm*, interdum *quàm possum:* ut,
Mihi nihil fuit optabilius quàm ut quàm gratissimus erga te esse cognoscerer. Cic.
Cæsar ad hostem quàm maximis potuit itineribus contendit. Cæs.

(*a.*) Pro *quàm* ante superlativum *maximus, quantus* aliquando usurpatur: ut,

Hannibal quantam maximam vastitatem potest cædibus incendiisque efficit. Liv.

126. *Donec, quoad,* et *dum,* cùm ad tempus refertur, indicativum modum plerumque exigunt, subjunctivum rarius: ut,

Priami dum regna manebant. Virg.

Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est. Cic.

Donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. Liv.

Haud desinam donec perfecero. Ter.

Tertia dum regnantem viderit æstas. Virg.

Expectas fortasse dum hæc dicat. Cic.

127. *Dummodo,* et *dum,* vel *modo* pro *dummodo* usurpata, soli subjunctivo junguntur: ut,

Omnia postposui dummodo præceptis patris pārērem. Cic.

Oderint dum metuant. Cic.

Manent ingenia senibus modo permaneat studium et industria. Cic.

128. *Quum,** causam significans, vel connectionem aliquam duarum sententiarum denotans, subjunctivo jungitur; si usurpetur pro *quòd,* indicativo: ut,

Druentia, quum aquæ vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est. Liv.

Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metûs plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare. Cic.

Præclarè facis quum Luculli memoriam tenes. Cic.

129. *Quum,* sequente *tum,* interdum subjunctivo, sæpius indicativo jungitur: ut,

Quum multæ res in philosophiâ nequicquam satis explicatæ sint, tum perdifficilis quæstio est de naturâ Deorum. Cic.

---

* *Quum* sæpe scribitur *cùm.*

Quum cognitionem juris augurii consequi cupio, tum meherculè tuis incredibiliter studiis delector. Cic.

130. *Quum,* tempus significans, interdum indicativo, interdum subjunctivo, jungitur: ut,

Qui non propulsat injuriam à suis, quum potest, injustè facit. Cic.

Ad Hannibalem quum ad lacum Averni esset, quinque nobiles juvenes venerunt. Liv.

Erit illud profectò tempus, quum gravissimi hominis fidem desideres. Cic.

131. *Antequam* et *priusquam* subjunctivo junguntur si res in dubio est, vel si duæ res de quibus agitur connectuntur; aliter, indicativum admittunt: ut,

Tempestas minatur antequam surgat. Sen.

Ante omnia veneunt quam gleba una ematur. Cic.

Quàm benè vivebant Saturno rege, priusquam Tellus in longas est patefacta vias. Tib.

132. *Quin* et *quominus* negationem, vel dubitationem, vel simile aliquid sequentia, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,

Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura. Cic.

Parmenio Philippum deterrere voluit quominus medicamentum biberet. Curt.

Tiberium non solitudines protegebant quin tormenta pectoris fateretur. Tac.

133. Conjunctiones finales, *ut, quo, ne,* et aliæ ab his derivatæ, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,

Pylades Oresten se esse dixit, ut pro illo necaretur. Cic.

Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. Sen.

Vereor ne tuum laborem augeam. Cic.

134. *Ut,* cùm tempus vel comparationem significat, indicativum post se habet: ut,

Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister. Ovid.

Ut fugiunt aquilam, timidissima turba, columbæ. Ov.

(a.) *Ut* pro *ubi* (rarus est usus) indicativo jungitur: ut,
Littus ut longè resonante Eoâ tunditur undâ. Cat.

135. *Ut* pro *quamvis* subjunctivo jungitur: ut,
Ut fueris dignior, non competitor in culpâ est. Cic.

136. *Utinam* subjunctivum exigit: ut,
Tu quoque cum ventis utinam mutabilis esses. Cic.
Illud utinam ne verè scriberem. Cic.

137. *Licet* subjunctivo jungitur; *quamvis* subjunctivo sæpius quam indicativo, nisi apud poetas; *quanquam* indicativo sæpius quam subjunctivo; *etsi* vel indicativo vel subjunctivo: ut,
Improbitas, licet adversario molesta sit, judici invisa est. Quint.
Quod turpe est, id, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest. Cic.
Romani, quanquam prœlio fessi erant, tamen procedunt. Sall.
Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt quod decet, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident. Cic.

138. *Si* et *nisi*, cùm indicatur rem de quâ agitur vel existere, vel posse existere, indicativo modo, vel præsenti vel perfecto subjunctivi junguntur; cùm indicatur rem non existere, imperfectum vel plusquamperfectum subjunctivi exigunt: ut,
Hunc patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas. Cic.
Si unquam visus tibi sum fortis, certè me in illâ causâ admiratus esses. Cic.
Tu, nisi ventis
Debes ludibrium, cave. Hor.
Multa me dehortantur à vobis, ni studium reipublicæ superet. Sall.

139. *Quasi*, *tanquam*, et similia, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,
Quid ego his testibus utor, quasi res incerta ac dubia esset. Cic.

Sic cogitandum est tanquam aliquis in intimum pectus inspicere possit. Sen.

140. *Quòd, quia, quoniam,* indicativo junguntur, cùm opinionem loquentis indicant; cùm aliorum, subjunctivo: ut,

Refugit te, quia rugæ
Turpant et capitis nives. Hor.

Laudat Panætius Africanum, quòd fuerit abstinens. Cic.

141. *Utrum, ne, an, num,* cùm dubitationem vel obliquam interrogationem significant, subjunctivum postulant, etiamsi conjunctio ipsa subaudiatur: ut,

Difficile est dictu utrum hostes magis Pompeii virtutem pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint. Cic.

Legati speculari jussi sunt num sollicitati animi sociorum a rege Perseo essent. Liv.

Doleam necne doleam nihil interest. Cic.

142. *Ne,* cùm prohibet, imperativo vel subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

Ne temne quòd ultrò
Præferimus manibus vittas. Virg.

Tu ne quæsieris quem mihi, quem tibi
Finem Dî dederint. Hor.

143. Omnes voces quæ interrogationem meram exprimunt, indicativo junguntur: ut,

Tune id veritus es? Cic.

Num eum facti piget? Cic.

Quis fuit horrendos qui primus protulit enses? Tib.

DE RELATIVO.

144. *Qui* causam significans subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium à Senatu peterent, misere. Liv.

Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat. Sen.

145. Cùm vero relativa propositio substantivi locum supplet, verbum in indicativo ponitur: ut,

Num alii oratores probantur à multitudine, alii ab iis qui intelligunt? (i. e. *à sapientibus.*) Cic.

Quoscunque de te queri audivi (i. e. *omnes querentes*) *placavi.* Cic.

146. Omnes voces indefinitè positæ, vel in obliquâ oratione, vel in sententiâ ab aliâ pendente, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Innocentia est affectio talis animi quæ noceat nemini. Cic.

Cui scribam video. Cic.

Experto credite, quantus
In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam. Virg.

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

147. Præpositiones

*Adversum adversus, cis citra, apud, ante, penes*que,
Intra, infra, contra, supra, post, circiter, inter,
Circa circum, ultra, juxta, erga, præter, et *extra,*
Ob, prope, per, propter, versus, trans, pone, secundum, ad,

accusativum regunt: ut,

Quem penes arbitrium est. Hor.

Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros. Virg.

Propter aquas. Virg.

Amicitia propter se expetenda est. Cic.

Per mare pauperiem fugiens. Hor.

Ludi decem per dies facti sunt. Cic.

Per me unum effectum est ut libertas in civitate maneret. Cic.

Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragœdias fecit. Cic.

Castra ad Cybistra locavi. Cic.

Aliquot post menses ad Cæsarem venit. Cic.

Post equitem sedet atra cura. Hor.
Præter castra Cæsar suas copias transduxit. Cæs.
Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est. Cic.

148. *A* (ante vocalem *ab*,) *absque, sine, coram, cum, de, e* (ante vocalem *ex*,) *præ, pro,* ablativum regunt: ut,
A te principium, tibi desinet. Virg.
Tecum mihi discordia est. Hor.
Non sine Dîs animosus infans. Hor.
Non loqui præ mœrore potuit. Cic.
Stabat pro templo et Capitolia celsa tenebat. Virg.
Cuncta pro hostibus erant. Tac.
E consulatu est profectus in Galliam. Cic.
Feliciter, et ex meâ sententiâ rempublicam gessit. Cic.

149. *In, super, sub,* et *subter* (quod tamen rarò invenitur,) pro sensu accusativum vel ablativum regunt: ut,
Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis. Hor.
In Senatum venit. Cic.
Lucus in arce fuit summâ. Ovid.
Super et Garamantas et Indos
Proferet imperium. Virg.
Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa. Virg.
Manet sub Jove frigido venator. Hor.
Sub eas literas statim recitatæ sunt tuæ. Cic.
Multaque me fugiunt primis spectata sub annis. Ovid.
Exercitus ejus sub jugum missus est. Cæs.
Angusti subter fastigia tecti
Æneam duxit. Virg.
Subter densâ testudine tuti. Virg.

150. *Tenus* ablativum singularem, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem regit; et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,
Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem. Virg.
Et crurum tenus à mento palearia pendent. Virg.
Altera per jugulum pennis tenus acta sagitta est. Ovid.

151. Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit quem extra compositionem regebat (*Vid. Reg.* 75): ut,

Detrudunt naves scopulo. Virg.
Prætereunt scopulos Ithacæ.

152. Verba composita cum *a, ab, ad, con, de,* et aliis præpositionibus, eandem præpositionem sæpe repetunt: ut,

Abstinuerunt à vino.

INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

153. Interjectiones non rarò sine casu ponuntur: ut,
Spem gregis, ah! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit. Virg.

154. *O* vocantis vocativo, exclamantis vocativo vel accusativo, jungitur: ut,

O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona nôrint,
Agricolas! Virg.
O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori. Virg.

155. *Heu* et *proh* accusativo vel vocativo junguntur: ut,

Heu pietas, heu prisca fides. Virg.
Heu stirpem invisam. Virg.
Proh Deûm atque hominum fidem. Ter.
Proh sancte Jupiter. Cic.

156. *Hei* et *væ* dativo junguntur: ut,

Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis. Ovid.
Væ misero mihi, quantâ de spe decidi. Ter.

157. *En* et *ecce* nominativo vel accusativo junguntur: ut,

Ecce tibi Italiæ tellus. Virg.
En quatuor aras;
Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duoque altaria Phœbo. Virg.

PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spiritum*, et *Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantùm tractare.

TEMPUS est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur˘; ut, *Dŏmĭnŭs.* Longum autem sic¯; ut, *cōntrā.*

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Pes duarum longarum syllabarum est spondæus: ut, *vīrtūs.*

Longa syllaba, duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus, dactylum efficit; ut, *scrībĕrĕ.*

SCANSIO est legitima versûs in singulos pedes com mensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalœpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, et *Cæsura.*

I. *Synalœpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio seqüentis: ut,

Sērā nĭmīs vīt' ēst crāstĭnă, vīv' hŏdīē. Mart.

pro *vita; vive.*

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est, quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ: ut,

Mōnstr' hŏrrēnd', ĭnfōrm', ĭngēns, cuī lūmĕn ădēmptūm.

Virg

pro *monstrum, horrendum, informe.*

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio: ut,

Seū lēntō fŭĕrīnt ālveārĭă vīmĭnĕ tēxtă. Virg.

quasi scriptum esset *alvaria.*

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ: ut,

Dēbŭĕrānt fūsōs ĕvŏlŭīssĕ sŭōs. Ov. Ep.

evoluisse pro *evolvisse.*

V. *Cæsura* est, cùm post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur: ut,

Pēctŏrĭbūs ĭnhĭāns spīrāntĭă cōnsŭlit ĕxta. Virg.

DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.

VERSUS heroïcus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

Tĭtўrĕ tū pătŭlāe rĕcŭbāns sŭb tēgmĭnĕ fāgī. Virg.

Reperitur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

Cārā Dĕūm sŏbŏlēs, māgnūm Jŏvĭs ĭncrēmēntūm. Virg.

Ultima cujuscunque versûs syllaba habetur communis.

VERSUS elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplici constat penthemimeri: quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed omninò dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ: ut,

Rēs ēst sōllĭcĭtī plēnă tĭmōrĭs ămor. Ovid. Epist.

PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eâdem dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut, *vēntus, āxis, patrīzo.*

II. Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

Mājŏr sūm quām cuī pōssīt fŏrtūnă nŏcēre.

Syllabæ *jor, sum, quam,* et *sit,* positione longæ sunt.

(*a*) At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producitur: ut,

Fĕrtĕ cĭtī jĕrrūm, dătĕ tēlā, scāndĭtĕ mūros. Virg.

III. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidâ, communis redditur: ut, *pătris, volŭcris:* quæ tamen regula in compositis non obtinet: ut, *ādmīror, ābrĭpĭo, sŭbruo, ōbruo.*

VOCALIS ante alteram in eâdem dictione ubique brevis est: ut, *Dĕus, mĕus, tŭus, pĭus.*

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius:* ut, *unĭus, illĭus,* &c. ubi *i* communis reperitur; licèt in *alterĭus* semper sit brevis, in *alīus* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *faciēi:* alioqui non; ut, *rĕi, spĕi, fidĕi.*

Fī etiam in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fīerem, fĭeri.*

Omnĭă jām fīūnt, fĭĕrī quaē pōssĕ nĕgābam.

Dīus primam syllabam habet longam, *Dĭana* communem.

Ohe, interjectio, priorem syllabam communem habet; *Eheu* penultimam semper producit.

Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicite, Pĭĕrides. Respice Laërten.*

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Æmĕïa nutrix. Rhodopēïus Orpheus.*

Omnis diphthongus apud Latinos longa est: ut, *aurum, neuter, musae*: nisi sequente vocali, cùm interdum corripitur: ut, *prœire, prœustus.*

DERIVATIVA eandem ferè cum primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur: ut, *ămator, ămicus, ămabilis,* primâ brevi ab *ămo.*

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ à brevibus deducta, primam syllabam producunt: ut,

cōmo, à *cŏma*,
fōmes, *fōmentum*, } à *fŏveo*,
hūmanus, ab *hŏmo*,
jūcundus, *jūmentum*, } à *jŭvo*,
lex lēgis, à *lĕgo*,
mācero, à *măcer*,
mōbilis, à *mŏveo*,
persōna, à *persŏno*,
rex rēgis, *rēgina*, *rēgula*, } à *rĕgo*,
sēcius, à *sĕcus*,
sēdes, à *sĕdeo*,
stīpendium, à *stips stĭpis*,
tēgula, à *tĕgo*,
trāgula, à *trăho*,
vox vōcis, à *vŏco*.

Et contrà sunt, quæ, à longis deducta, primam corripiunt: ut,

ărena, *ărista*, *ărundo*, } *ab āreo*,
ăruspex, ab *āra*,
dĭcax, *mălĕdĭcus*, } à *dīco*,
dĭtio, à *dītis*,
dux dŭcis, à *dūco*,
fĭdes, *perfĭdus*, } à *fīdo*,
frăgor, *frăgilis*, } à *frāngo*,
lăbo, à *lābor*,
lăcerna, à *lūceo*,
mŏlestus, à *mōles*,
ŏdium, ab *ōdi*,
păciscor, à *pax pācis*,
quandŏquidem, à *quandō*,
sĭquidem, à *sī*,
sŏpor, à *sōpio*.

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur: ut, à *lĕgo lĕgis, parlĕgo*; à *lēgo lēgas, allēgo*; à *pŏtens, impŏtens*; à *sōlor, consōlor.*

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enata: ut, *dejĕro, pejĕro*; à *jūro*; *innŭba, pronŭba*, à *nūbo.*

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *lēgi, ēmi, mōvi.*

1. Excipias tamen, *bĭbi, dĕdi, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli*, et *fĭdi* à *findo.*

2. Primam præteriti geminantia primam brevem habent: ut, *cĕcĭdi*, à *cado*; *cĕcīdi*, à *cædo*; *dĭdici, fĕfelli, mŏmordi, pĕpendi, pŭpugi, tĕtendi, tĕtigi, tŏtondi, tŭtudi.*

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *vīsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum.*

Excipe *dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum, stătum*, et *cĭtum* à *cieo cies*; nam *cītum* à *cio cis*, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

Penultima tertiæ personæ pluralis perfecti activi in *-erunt* desinens, si antepenultima brevis sit, communis habenda est.

ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Finita producuntur: ut, *āmā, contrā, ergā.*

Excipias, *ităquiă, eiă.* Item omnes casus in *a,* cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis; præter vocativos à Græcis in *as;* ut, *ô Æneā:* et ablativum primæ declinationis: ut, *musā.*

II. In *b, d, t,* puris desinentia, brevia sunt: ut, *ăb, ăd, capŭt.*

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur: ut, *āc, sīc,* et *hīc,* adverbium.

Sed *făc, nĕc, donĕc,* corripiuntur.

Pronomen *hĭc,* et neutrum ejus *hŏc,* modò non sit ablativi casûs, communia sunt.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt: ut, *marĕ, penĕ, legĕ, scribĕ.*

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflectionis in *e;* ut, *fidē, diē,* unà cum particulis indè enatis; ut, *hodiē, quotidiē, pridiē, postridiē:* item *quarē,* et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundæ item personæ singulares secundæ conjugationis; ut, *docē, movē:* præter *cavĕ,* quod ultimam plerumque corripit.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e;* ut, *mē, tē, sē:* præter *quĕ, nĕ, vĕ,* conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent: ut, *pulchrē*, *doctē*, *valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē*, *ferē*: *benĕ* tamen et *malĕ* corripiuntur omninò.

Postremò, quæ à Græcis per *η* scribuntur, naturâ producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casûs, generis, aut numeri: ut, *Lethē*, *Anchisē*, *cetē*, *Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt: ut, *dominī*, *magistrī*, *amarī*.

Præter *mihĭ*, *tibĭ*, *sibĭ*, *ubĭ*, *ibĭ*, quæ sunt communia.

Nisĭ et *quasĭ* corripiuntur.

Corripiuntur quoque dativi et vocativi singulares nominum propriorum in *is*, à Græcis derivatorum, quorum genitivus penultimâ brevi crescit: ut, dativi *Minoidĭ*, *Palladĭ*, *Phyllidĭ*; vocativi *Alexĭ*, *Amaryllĭ*, *Daphnĭ*.

VI. *L* finita corripiuntur: ut, *animăl*, *Hannibăl*, *mĕl*, *pugĭl*, *consŭl*.

Præter *nīl* (contractum à *nihil*,) *sāl*, et *sōl*.

VII. *N* finita corripiuntur: ut, *ăn*, *carmĕn*, *ĭn*, *Ilĭŏn*, *Itўn*.

Excipiuntur *quīn*, *nōn*; et nomina pauca à Græcis derivata, quæ penultimam genitivi producunt: ut, *delphīn*, *delphīnis*; *Xenophōn*, *Xenophōntis*.

Producuntur quoque accusativi masculini primæ declinationis in *ān* et *ēn*: ut, *Æneān*, *Anchisēn*; et accusativi fœminini in *ēn* et *rān*: ut, *Pēnĕlŏpēn*, *Electrān*: cæteri fœminini in *ăn* corripiuntur: ut, *Maiăn*, *Iphigenĭăn*.

VIII. *O* finita longa sunt: ut, *dicō, virgō, porrō, legendō.*

Excipiuntur *modŏ*, et composita ejus; et *sciŏ, nesciŏ, putŏ, citŏ, egŏ, homŏ, cedŏ*, quæ corripiuntur.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba in *o* desinentia, quæ ultimam interdum corripiunt: ut,

Te petŏ quem meruī. Ov.
Non erŏ, terra, tuus. Ov.
Fortunam vultus fassa tegendŏ suos. Ov.

Sed hæc exempla non sunt à tironibus imitanda.

Propria nomina virorum in *o* desinentia communia sunt: ut, *Polliō, Nasō.*

Duŏ quoque et *nemŏ* ultimam communem habent.

IX. *R* finita corripiuntur: ut, *Cæsăr, pĕr, vĭr, uxŏr, turtŭr.*

Producuntur autem, *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, vūr; pār* quoque, cum compositis: ut, *compār, impār, dispār.*

Græca etiam in *ēr*, quæ illis in ηρ desinunt: ut, *aēr, cratēr, characтēr, æthēr*; præter *patĕr* et *matĕr*, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.

X. *S* finita pares cum numero vocalium habent terminationes: nempè, *as, es, is, os, us, ys.*

I. *As* finita producuntur: ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās.*

Præter nomina propria Græca, quorum genitivus singularis penultimam brevem habet: ut, *Arcăs, Pallăs*; genitivo, *Arcădŏs, Pallădŏs.*

Et præter accusativos plurales Græco more formatos: ut, *herōs, heroăs; gigās, gigantăs.*

II. *Es* finita longa sunt: ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs.*

1. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripiunt: ut, *miles, seges, dives.* Sed *aries, abies, paries, Ceres,* et *pes,* unà cum compositis, ut *bipes, tripes,* longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque, à *sum,* unà cum compositis, corripitur; ut, *potes, ades, prodes, obes:* quibus *penes* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum: ut, *hippomanes, cacoëthes. Cyclopes, Naiades.*

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt: ut, *Paris, panis, tristis, hilaris.*

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is,* qui producuntur: ut, *musis, mensis* à *mensa, dominis, templis;* et *quis* pro *quibus.*

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *Samnis, Salamis;* genitivo, *Samnitis, Salamînis.*

3. Et monosyllaba item omnia; ut, *vis, lis:* præter *is* et *quis* nominativos, et *bis* apud Ovidium.

Secunda persona singularis præsentis activi quartæ conjugationis producit *is;* ut, *audis:* sic *possis, velis, nolis, malis.*

Secundæ personæ singulares futuri secundi activi indicativi, et perfecti subjunctivi, *is* commune faciunt: ut, *fecerîs, dederis.*

(a.) Porrò in his temporibus secunda persona pluralis penultimam communem habet: ut, *dixeritis transieritis.*

Gratis et *foris* ultimam producunt.

IV. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honos, nepos, dominos, servos.*

Præter *compos, impos, os ossis,* et *exos.*

Et nomina propria derivata à Græcis in *os*: ut, *Delŏs, Chaŏs, Palladŏs, Phyllidŏs.*

v. *Us* finita corripiuntur: ut, *famulŭs, regiŭs, tempŭs, amamŭs.*

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *salūs, tellūs*; genitivo, *salūtis, tellūris.*

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflectionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares: ut, gen. sing. *manūs*; nom. accus. voc. plur. *manūs.*

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba: ut, *crūs, thūs, mūs, sūs.*

Et Græca item per ους diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casûs: ut, nom. *Panthūs, Melampūs*; gen. *Sapphūs, Clīūs.*

VI. *Ys* finita corripiuntur: ut, *Itўs.*

XI. *U* finita producuntur omnia: ut, *manū, genū, amatū, diū.*

XII. *Y* finita corripiuntur: ut, *Tiphў.*

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS;

OR,

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS,

CONSTRUED.

I. PROPRIA *proper names* quæ *which* tribuuntur *are assigned* maribus *to the male kind* dicas *you may call* mascula *masculines;* ut *as,* sunt *are* Divorum *the names of the heathen Gods,* Mars *the God of war,* Bacchus *the God of wine,* Apollo *the God of wisdom;* Virorum *the names of men;* ut *as* Cato, *a noble Roman,* Virgilius *the Poet Virgil;* Fluviorum *the names of Rivers;* ut *as,* Tibris *the Tiber,* Orontes, *a river by Antioch;* Mensium *the names of months,* ut *as* October *the month October;* Ventorum *the names of winds,* ut *as* Libs *the south-west wind,* Notus *the south wind,* Auster *the south wind;* Montium *the names of mountains,* ut *as* Ossa *mount Ossa;* Alpis tamen *but the Alps* est *is* muliebris *feminine,* et *and* Œta *mount Œta,* Cyllene *mount Cyllene,* Rhodope *mount Rhodope,* et *and* Ætna *mount Ætna* gravis *terrible* cæcis ignibus *with hidden fires;* Pelion *mount Pelion* est neutrum *is neuter;* Soracte *mount Soracte,* Ceraunia *the Ceraunian mountains* neutra *are neuter.* (*v.* 1—7.)

II. PROPRIA nomina *proper names* referentia *denoting* fœmineum sexum *the female sex* tribuuntur *are given* fœmineo generi *to the feminine gender;* sive *whether* sunt *they are* Dearum *the names of Goddesses,* ut *as* Juno *Jupiter's wife,* Venus *the Goddess of beauty;* Muliebria *the names of women,* ut *as* Anna *Anne,* Philotis *Philote;* Urbium *the names of cities,* ut *as* Elis *a city of Peloponnesus,* Opus *a city of Locris;* Regionum *the names of countries,* ut *as* Græcia

Greece, Persis *Persia :* Item *also* nomen *the name* insulæ *of an island;* ceu *as,* Creta *Crete,* Britannia *Britain,* Cyprus *Cyprus.* (*v.* 8—12.)

Dulichium *the island Dulichium* neutrum *is neuter,* ut ventura regula *a coming rule* monstrat *shews.* Excipias etiam *you may except also* quasdam urbes *some cities;* nam *for* Sulmo *Sulmo* et *and* Delphi *the town Delphi* mascula *are masculine,* et similes *and similar words.* Selinus *the town Selinus* genus est utrumque *is of both genders,* Pharsalus *so is Pharsalus,* et Marathon *and Marathon.* Quædam *some are* neutralia *neuter;* ut *as,* Argos *Argos,* Tusculum *Tusculum,* item *also* Tibur *Tivoli,* Tarentumque *and Taranto* imbelle luxu *effeminate from luxury;* Pergamaque *and Troy,* et *and* quot pluralia *as many plural nouns as* præstant finem in a *have their termination in a.* Prænestе *Præneste* dat *gives* fœmineum et neutrum *the feminine and neuter gender,* Ilion *so does Troy,* Anxur *and Terracina.* Latium *Latium* est neutrum *is neuter,* Bosphorus *the Bosphorus* mas *is masculine;* adjice *add* Pontus *Pontus.* (*v.* 13—20.)

III. DISCES *you will learn that* nomina gemmarum *the names of precious stones are* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender,* veluti *as* sapphirus *a sapphire;* ast *but* opalus *an opal* mas *is masculine* atque *and* smaragdus *an emerald.* Cernes item *you will see also* nomina *the names* arborum *of trees* muliebria *feminine;* ut *as,* alnus *an alder-tree,* cupressus *a cypress-tree,* cedrus *a cedar-tree.* Spinus *a sloe-tree* mas *is masculine,* oleaster *a wild olive-tree* mas *is masculine.* Plerumque videbis *you will for the most part see* cætera *the rest* in er *ending in er* neutrale genus *of the neuter gender;* quale *as,* papaver *a poppy,* acer *a maple-tree;* quêis adjice *to which add* thus *frankincense* atque *and* robur *an oak.* Cytisusque *and hadder* rubusque *and a bramble* adjungunt *add* muliebre *the feminine gender* mari *to the masculine :* intubus *endive* in numero plurali *in the plural number* habet *has* intuba, neutrum *of the neuter gender.* (*v.* 21—28.)

Nomina *the names* vôlucrum *of birds;* ceu *as,* passer *a sparrow,* hirundo *a swallow :* ferarum *of wild beasts;* ut *as,* felis *a cat,* vulpes *a fox :* et *and* piscium *the names of fishes;* ut *as,* ostrea *an oyster,* cetus *a whale,* sunt *are* dicta *called*

epicœna *nouns of the epicene gender;* quibus *to which* vox ipsa *the termination itself* feret *will give* genus aptum *the right gender.* (*v.* 29—31.)

Multa etiam *many also* dabunt *will give* commune genus *the common gender;* ut *as,* lepus *a hare,* anser *a goose,* vespertilio *a bat,* mus *a mouse,* grus *a crane,* bos *an ox or cow,* canis *a dog,* atque *and* elephantus *an elephant.* Sus *a pig,* tigris *a tiger,* et *and* anguis *a snake* jungunt *join* fœmineum *the feminine gender* mari *to the masculine;* et *and* serpens *a serpent,* damæque *and deer,* et *and* talpæ *moles* egentes lumine *deprived of sight.* (*v.* 32—35.)

IV. DECLENSION I.

As, es, *words ending in as and es* erunt *will be* mascula *masculines:* inflexio prima *the first declension* habebit *will have* a, e, *words ending in a or e* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender,* nisi *unless* sensus *the sense* prohibet *forbids.* Boreas *the north wind,* satrapes *a satrap,* mas *are masculine;* litera *a letter* muliebris *is feminine,* Circe *and Circe.* Sed *but* scriba *a scribe* mas genus *is the masculine gender,* sic *so* scurra *a buffoon,* athleta *an athlete,* lanista *a fencing master.* (*v.* 36—39.)

V. DECLENSION II.

Secunda *the second declension* dat *gives* um *nouns ending in um* neutrale *neuter,* us et er *nouns ending in us and er* plerumque *generally* mas *masculine.* Sic *so* regnum *a kingdom* neutrum *is neuter,* dominus *a master* mas *is masculine,* atque *and* magister *a teacher.* Sed *but* quæ dicta supra sunt *what has been said before* dabunt *will give* legenti *the reader* pauca *a few words* excipienda *to be excepted;* nam *for* malus *an apple* arbor *being a tree* muliebris erit *will be feminine,* et Abydus *and Abydos* nomen *the name* urbis *of a city:* sic *so* alvus *a belly,* humus *the ground,* colus *a distaff,* atque *and* carbasus *linen,* et *and* vannus *a winnowing machine;* sic *so* phaselus *a boat* nota *known* Nilo *to the Nile.*—Pauca etiam *a few also* deducta *derived* Græcis *from the Greeks* occurrent *will occur,* papyrus *paper,* antidotus *an antidote,* costus *the herb zedoary,* diphthongus *a diphthong,* byssus *fine flax,* et

and illa *those words* quot *as many as* os breve *os short* claudit *ends;* ceu *as,* Delos *Delos,* Sestos *Sestos,* et *and* Isthmos *an isthmus;* sed *but* virus *poison,* pelagus *the sea* neutralia *are neuter,* et *and* adjice *add* vulgus *the common people,* quamvis *although* interdum *sometimes* ponas *you may class* hoc *this* inter mascula *among masculines:* non genus est ullum *there is not any gender* quo *in which* penus *provisions* non invenietur *will not be found.* (*v.* 40—51.)

VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

Crede *consider* voces *the words* quas *which* tertia inflexio *the third declension* reddit *affords* mares *masculine* lectori *to the reader,* si *if* or, os, er, o quoque *and o* claudit *terminate* rectum *the nominative case;* vel *or* quas *those which* es finit *ends,* quibusque *and in which* genitivus *the genitive case* crescit *increases:* sic *so,* honor *honour,* atque *and* heros *a hero,* crater *a cup,* sermoque *and a discourse,* tapesque *and a carpet:* at *but* soror *a sister* atque *and* uxor *a wife* muliebria semper *are always feminine,* et *and* arbor *a tree;* sed *but* cor *a heart,* marmor *marble,* ador *corn,* et *and* æquor *the sea* neutralia semper *are always neuter.* Sic *so* cos *a whetstone* est *is* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender,* dosque *and a dowry,* sed *but* os, seu *whether* oris habet *it makes oris* (*meaning a face*), sive ossis *or ossis* (*meaning a bone,*) erit *will be* neutrale *neuter,* chaosque *and chaos,* et *and* melos *melody;* atque alia *and other words* deducta *derived* a linguâ Pelasgâ *from the Greek language.* Tuber, fructus *when meaning the fruit,* mas est *is masculine,* sed *but* erit *it will be* muliebris *feminine* ut *as* arbor *the tree:* linter *a boat* communis *is common;* ver *spring* neutrum *is neuter, so are* verber *a stripe,* et *and* uber *a teat,* atque *and* cadaver *a carcass,* iter *a journey,* spinther *a buckle,* quibus adjice *to which add* tuber *a mushroom,* atque *and* quot nomina *as many nouns as* finita per er *ending in er* notant *denote* plantas *plants.* Excipias quoque *you may except also,* lector *o reader,* hyperdissyllabon *a word of more than two syllables* in do *ending in do,* et quot *and as many words as* io claudit *ends,* deducta *being derived* verbis *from verbs;* velut *as* libido *lust,* formidoque *and fear;* sic *so* dictio *speaking,* lectio *reading;* porro *moreover* caro *flesh* est *is* muliebris *feminine,* atque *and* echo *echo,*

atque *and* Argo *the Argo* et *and* imago *an image;* cupido *love* est *is* ritè *properly* muliebris *feminine,* cùm *when* notat *it speaks of* affectum *the passion,* et tamen *and yet* vates *poets* interdum *sometimes* cogunt hoc *press this* in mascula *into the list of masculines.* Disces *you will learn* pauca *that a few* finita per es *ending in es* fœminei generis *are of the feminine gender,* licet crescentia *although increasing in the genitive case;* merges *a fork-ful,* mercesque *and a reward,* quiesque *and rest,* et *and* teges *a mat,* atque *and* seges *a cornfield;* quadrupes *a quadruped* communis *is common,* et *and* ales *a bird,* atque *and* obses *a hostage,* comes *a companion,* atque *and* hospes *a host, or hostess,* quibus *to which* adjice *add* princeps *a prince, or princess.* (*v.* 52—74.)

VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

Omne quod *every word which* exit in *ends in* as, is, ys, aus, x, es quoque *and es,* quando *when* non crescit *it does not increase* genitivo *in the genitive case,* erit *will be* muliebre *feminine;* superque *and moreover* s liquidâ præeunte *s when preceded by a liquid* præbet idem genus *gives the same gender,* memento *remember;* sic *so* pietas *piety,* fraus *fraud,* atque *and* chlamys *a cloak,* navisque *and a ship,* ratisque *and a ship,* pax *peace,* radix *a root,* nubes *a cloud,* et *and* hyems *winter,* mors *death;* excipe *except* pauca *a few;* as assis *a pound weight* mas erit *will be masculine,* compôstaque *and its compounds;* elephasque *and an elephant* mas *is masculine,* et *and* quicquid Græcum *whatever word originally Greek,* habet -antis *makes -antis in the genitive,* ut *as* Atlas *Atlas,* atque *and* gigas *a giant,* adamas *adamant,* vas vadis *a surety,* e sensu *because of the sense,* est mas *is masculine,* vas vasis *a vessel,* neutrum *is neuter;* sic *so* fas *right* neutrale *is neuter,* nefasque *and wrong.* Videbis quoque *you will see also* multa *many nouns* is finita *ending in is* mascula *masculine,* pulvis *dust,* et *and* pollis *bran,* cucumis *a cucumber,* sanguis *blood,* lapis *a stone,* amnis *a river,* et *and* axis *an axletree,* glis *a dormouse,* caulis *a stalk,* cassis, cùm non crescit genitivo, *when, meaning a net, it does not increase in the genitive,* (cassis enim *for a helmet,* à quo *from which* cassidis venit *comes* est *is* muliebre *feminine*) collis *a hill,* fascis *a faggot,* follis *a bellows,* funis *a rope,* pestis *a plague,* et *and* ensis *a*

sword, ignis *fire*, panis *bread*, piscis *a fish*, postis *a door-post*, et *and* adjice *add* mensis *a month*, orbis *a world*, sentis *a thorn*, torris *a brand*, vectis *a lever*, vermis *a worm*, et *and* unguis *a talon*, natalis *a birth-day;* et *and* quæ *words which* rarius extant *are seldom found* numero primo *in the singular number*, annales *annals*, addeque *and add* molares *eye-teeth* rapidis jugalibus *to fleet carriage-horses.* Quinetiam *moreover* cernes *you will see* pauca *a few* communia *common;* canalis *a channel*, et *and* scrobis *a ditch*, et *and* torquis *a chain*, callis *a path*, finis *an end*, cinis *ashes*, etsi *although* hæc duo *these two last* plurali *in the plural number* apparent tibi *are seen by you* tantum mascula *as masculine only.* Et quoniam *and since* nunc vir *sometimes a man*, nunc fœmina *sometimes a woman* dicitur *is spoken of*, hostis *an enemy* est *is* commune genus *of the common gender*, civis *so is a citizen*, testis *a witness*, patruelis *a cousin.* Lex potior *a law of superior weight* est data *has been assigned* cur *why* Halys *the river Halys* exstet mas *is masculine*, et *and* Othrys *mount Othrys.* Es non crescens *es not increasing in the genitive* dat *gives* mascula nulla *no masculine nouns*, acinace dempto *except* 'it *scimitar.* At *but* vates *a poet* commune *is common*, vepres etiam *also a bramble*, atque *and* palumbes *a dove.*—Græca *the words derived from Greek* quæ *which* ax finit *end in ax* sunt *are* plurima mascula *mostly masculines*, thorax *a breast-plate*, et *and* cordax *a kind of dance*, anthrax *a coal;* sic *so* plurima *many words* quæ *which* ex claudit *ex ends*, qualis *such as* apex *a top*, codex *a book*, cimex *a bug*, cortexque *and bark*, culexque *and a gnat*, grex *a flock*, vertex *a top*, murex *a shell-fish*, pulex *a flea*, caudexque *and a stool*, silexque *and flint.*—Pauca *a few* per ix finita *ending in ix*, calix *a cup*, fornix *a vault*, ita so phœnix *a phœnix*, Græcaque *and words derived from Greek* in yx *ending in yx*, ut *as* onyx *an onyx*, et *and* oryx *an antelope*, bombyxque *and a silkworm*, calyxque *and the cup of a flower;* sic *so* quincunx *five ounces*, septunx *seven ounces*, et cætera *and the rest of such words* mascula *are masculine;* porrò *moreover* adeps *fat*, dens *a tooth*, fons *a fountain*, mons *a mountain*, pons *a bridge*, mascula *are masculine;* hydropsque *and the dropsy*, chalybsque *and steel*, gryps *a griffin*, torrens *a torrent*, oriensque *and the east*, rudensque *and a cable*, vidensque *and a sheep*, tridensque *and a trident;* epopsque *both a hoopoe* meropsque *and a woodpecker* mascula *are*

masculine, et *and* stirps *a stock* habetur *is accounted* communis *common.* (*v.* 75—110.)

VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS.

Quæ *the nouns which* a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us, claudunt *end,* leguntur *are found in reading* neutra *to be neuter;* vides *you may see* exempla *examples;* poema *a poem,* et *and* mare *the sea,* misy *vitriol,* sinapi *mustard,* alec *pickle,* lac *milk,* mel *honey,* animalque *and an animal;* carmen *a verse,* et *and* adde *add* caput *a head,* laquear *a ceiling,* jecur *the liver,* adjice *add* tempus *time.* Sol *the sun,* mugil *a mullet,* mascula *are masculine;* sic *so* sal *salt* plerumque *generally,* pluralique *and in the plural number* sales *wit* semper *always.* Præsul *a president* et *and* exul *an exile* et *and* vigil *a sentinel* communia *are common;* fidicen *a harpist,* ren *a kidney,* pecten *a comb,* mascula *are masculines;* et *and* addas *you may add* paucissima *a very few* deducta *derived* a Græcâ linguâ *from the Greek language,* delphin *a dolphin,* lichen *ringworm,* et *and* pæan *a song in honour of Apollo;* primâque e lege *and according to the first rule in the book,* Cithæron *mount Cithæron,* sindon *muslin,* atque *and* icon *an image,* et *and* Amazon *an Amazon,* muliebria sunt *are feminine;* et *and* alcyones *king-fishers,* quæ *which word* rarius exstant *is seldom found* numero primo *in the singular number.* Par, significans *meaning* socium *a mate,* mas *is masculine;* turtur *a turtle-dove* mas *is masculine,* et *and* augur *a soothsayer,* fur *a thief,* vultur *a vulture,* sic *so* furfur *bran:* pauca *a few* in us *ending in us* muliebria *are feminine,* ut *as* virtus *virtue,* incus *an anvil,* tellus *the earth,* palus *a marsh,* atque *and* juventus *youth,* atque *and* pecus *a flock, making* pecudis *in the genitive case;* dans *when it makes* pecoris *meaning a herd* accipe *take it* neutrum *as neuter.* (*v.* 111—125.)

IX. DECLENSION IV.

U neutrum *a noun ending in u is neuter,* ut *as* cornu *a horn;* us *a noun ending in us* mas *is masculine,* ceu *as* cursus *a course,* et *and* actus *an act of a play;* porticus *a portico,* atque *and* tribus *a tribe,* muliebria *are feminine,* acusque *and a needle,* domusque *and a house,* et *and* manus *a hand,* et *and*

quercus *an oak,* sic *so* idus *the ides of the month* cum quinquatribus *and a feast in honour of Minerva called Quinquatrus;* sensus *the sense* monstrat *shows* anus *an old woman,* nurus *a daughter-in-law,* et *and* socrus *a mother-in-law* muliebria *to be feminine.* (*v.* 126—129.)

X. DECLENSION V.

Quinta *the fifth declension* dat *gives* muliebre genus *the feminine gender,* ut *as* spes *hope;* at *but* dies *a day* est *is* numero plurali *in the plural number* mas tantum *masculine only;* primo *in the singular number* commune *it is common.* (*v.* 130, 131.)

XI. ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* habentia *having* duntaxat *only* unam vocem *one termination,* ut *as,* felix *happy,* audax *bold,* retinent *keep* genus omne *every gender* sub unâ *under that one ending.* Si *if* cadunt *they fall* sub *under* geminâ voce *a double termination,* velut *as,* omnis, et *and* omne *all,* vox prior *the former word* est *is* commune duûm *the common of two genders,* vox altera *the second word* neutrum *is neuter:* at *but* si *if* variant *they vary* tres voces *the three endings,* ut *as,* sacer, sacra, sacrum *sacred;* vox prima *the first word* est *is* mas *masculine,* altera *the second* fœmina *feminine,* tertia *the third* neutrum *is neuter.* (*v.* 132—137.)

Sunt queis *there are some in which* plurales casus *the plural cases* in a *ending in a* non adhibentur *are not used,* pauper *poor,* inops *poor,* puber *of ripe age,* sospes *safe,* cum *with* degener *degenerate,* uber *fruitful,* et *and* dives *rich,* locuples *rich,* memor *mindful,* immemor *unmindful,* atque *and* superstes *surviving.* (*v.* 138—140.)

NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR,

IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

QUÆ *those nouns which* variant *change* genus *their gender* aut *or* flexum *declension,* quæcunque *and whatsoever nouns* novato ritu *after a new manner* deficiunt *fall short* ve *or* superant *exceed in declining,* sunto *let them be called* Heteroclita *Heteroclites, or nouns irregular.* (*v.* 1, 2.)

CERNIS *you see* hæc *these nouns* variantia *varying* genus *the gender* in variis numeris *in the different numbers.* (*v.* 3.)

Nam *for* hæc *these words* maria *masculine* primo numero *in the singular number* sunt neutra *are neuter* secundo *in the plural;* tartarus horribilis *horrid hell;* sic *so* sibilus *a hiss,* intubus *endive,* exstant *are seen.* At *but* jocus *a jest* addit utrumque genus *adds both genders* plurali numero *to the plural number,* et *and* locus *a place:*—hæc *these words* primo mulicbria *are feminine in the singular,* neutra *neuter* secundo *in the plural;* Pergamos *Troy,* et *and* ostrea *the oyster* exquirenda *to be sought* lautis cœnis *for rich suppers,* carbasus *and linen:*—hæc *these words* habebunt *will have* neutrum *the neuter gender* primo *in the singular number,* mas *the masculine* altero *in the other;* et *both* siser *a parsnip,* et *and* cœlum *heaven,* Argosque *and Argos* amatum *loved* Junoni *by Juno.* Rastrum *a rake* exstat *exists* genere utroque *in each gender* plurali *in the plural,* et *and* frenum *a bridle,* quin *moreover* epulum *a feast* primo *in the singular,* ast *but* epulæ, leguntur *is read* plurale *in the plural.* (*v.* 4—12.)

PROPAGO *the stock* quæ *which* sequitur *follows* est *is* manca *defective* casu *in case,* numerove *or in number.* (*v.* 13.)

HIS neutris *in these neuters* poteris tu *you will be able* cernere *to see* nullos casus *no cases,* nî *except* qui *those which* sunt tibi *are,* ut scis *as you know,* semper *always* îdem *the same* in hoc genere *in this gender.* Hippomanes *a humour in mares,* cacoethes *a bad habit,* epos *an epic poem,* melos *melody,* adjice *add* gummi *gum,* et *and* fas *right,* mane *the morning,* nihil *nothing,* pondo *weight,* instar *likeness;* plurali *in the plural,* Tempe *the vale of Tempe,* grata *pleasant* perenni sub zephyro *with perpetual zephyrs,* tot *so many,* quot *how many,* et *and* omnes numeri *all nouns of number* à tribus *from three* ad centum *to a hundred,* quæ *which* vocantur *are called* aptota *aptotes.* (*v.* 14—19.)

SUNT quoque *there are also* nomina multa *many nouns* queîs *to which* rectus casus *the nominative case* abest *is wanting,* aut alii *or other cases,* deficientes *deficient* nullo certo ordine *in no certain order,* ut *as* fors *chance,* frugis *corn,* opis *help,* dapis *a feast,* et *and* vicis *a turn,* impetis *violence,* et *and* vis *force,* verberis *a strike,* et *and* fidis *a lyre,* atque *and* lues *a plague,* sordemque *and dirt,* vepremque *and a bramble;* quin *moreover* pauca *a few* videnda sunt *are to be seen* ablativo solo *in the ablative case alone,* ut sunt *as are* compede *a fetter,* fauce *a jaw,* prece *prayer,* atque *and* ambage *a circuit;* sed *but* omnia *all these* plerumque leguntur *are generally found* integra *entire* plurali numero *in the plural number.* Sic *so* jussu *by order,* natu *by birth,* permissu *by leave,* sponte *of one's own accord,* rogatu *by asking,* mandatu *by command;* sed his *but to these* et pluralis *the plural also* deficit *is wanting,* atque *and* plura quoque *more also* occurrent *will occur* tibi *to you* suo tempore quæque *each in its good time.* (*v.* 20—29.)

Hæc *these words* nunquam habebunt *will never have* pluralem numerum *a plural number,* nam *for* sensus *the sense* prohibet *prevents it;* cœnum *mud,* limus *clay,* sic *so* triticum *wheat,* et *and* aurum *gold,* argentum *silver,* et *and* paria *similar words;* his *to these* pietas *piety* addenda *is to be added,* pudorque *and shame,* et *and* sitis *thirst,* atque *and* fames *hunger,* infantia *infancy,* firma juventus *vigorous youth,* atque *and* senecta gravis *sad old age,* vel *or* senectus, vox magis apta *a better word;* ver *spring,* vesper *evening,* letum *death,* specimen *a specimen,* victusque *and food,* supellexque *and furni-*

ture, et *an I* virus *poison*, sanguis *blood*, plebs *the people*, atque *and* ignobile vulgus *the mean common people*, cum paucis aliis *with a few others;* sic *so* nomina propria cuncta *all proper names.* (*v.* 30—37.)

MASCULA *these masculines* sunt *are* contenta *confined* numero secundo *to the plural number* tantùm *only*, manes *ghosts*, majores *ancestors*, cancelli *lattices*, liberi *children*, et *and* antes *the fore-ranks of vines*, primores *chiefs*, proceres *nobles*, fasti simul *also annals*, atque *and* minores *posterity*, inferi *the gods below*, item *also* superi *the gods above*, lemures *spectres*, quibus *to which* adde *add* penates *household gods*, et *and* loca *names of places* plurali *of the plural number*, quales *as* que *both* Gabii *a city in Italy* que *and* Locri *the inhabitants of Locris*, et *and* quæcunque *whatever nouns* similis rationis *of like nature* legas *you may read* passim *in authors.* (*v.* 38—43.)

Hæc *these nouns* sunt *are* fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*, que *and* numeri secundi *of the plural number;* exuviæ *anything stript off from the body*, phaleræ *horse-trappings*, grates *thanks*, et *and* ineptiæ *follies*, et *and* idus *the ides of a month*, blanditiæ *caresses*, induciæ *a truce*, simul *also* que *both* insidiæ *an ambush*, que *and* minæ *threats*, excubiæ *watch by day and night*, nonæ *the nones of a month*, nugæ *trifles*, tricæque *and toys*, calendæ *the calends of a month*, quisquiliæ *the sweepings or refuse of any thing*, thermæ *a hot bath*, cunæ *a cradle*, diræ *curses*, que *and* exequiæ *funeral rites*, feriæ *holidays*, et *and* inferiæ *sacrifices performed to the dead*, sic *so* primitiæque *both the first fruits of the year*, plagæque *and nets.* Deliciæ *delight*, tenebræque *and darkness*, et *and* valvæ *folding-doors*, divitiæque *and riches*, item *also* nuptiæ *a marriage*, et *and* lactes *the small guts:* Thebæ *Thebes* et *and* Athenæ *Athens* addantur *may be added*, quod genus *of which sort* invenias *you may find* et *also* nomina plura *more names* locorum *of places.* (*v.* 44—52.)

Hæc neutra *these nouns neuter* pluralia *of the plural number* leguntur *are read* rariùs *seldom* primo *in the singular;* mœnia *the walls of a city*, cum *with* tesquis *rough and desert places*, præcordia *the midriff of the body*, lustra *the dens* ferarum *of wild beasts*, arma *arms*, mapalia *Numidian cottages*, sic *so* bellaria *junkets*, munia *an office or charge*, castra *a camp;*

funus *a funeral* petit *requires* justa *solemnities,* et *and* virgo *a virgin* petit *requires* sponsalia *espousals;* disertus *an eloquent man* amat *loves* rostra *the pulpit,* puerique *and children* gestant *carry* crepundia *rattles,* infantesque *and infants* coluut cunabula *lie in cradles;* augur *a soothsayer* consulit *consults* exta *the entrails,* piæ puellæ *pious maidens* connectunt *weave* sacra serta *sacred garlands.* Festa *the feasts* deûm *of the gods,* ceu *as* Bacchanalia *feasts dedicated to Bacchus,* poterunt *will be able* jungi *to be joined.* Quòd si *and if* leges *you shall read* plura *more,* licet reponas *you may place them* quoque *also* hâc classe *in this rank.* (*v.* 53—61.)

Porrò *moreover* invenies tu *you will find,* lector *o reader,* nomina pauca *a few nouns* secundæ *of the second declension* sumentia *taking* etiam *also* quosdam casus *some cases* quartæ *of the fourth,* atque *and* præcipue *particularly* dedignantia *disdaining* fines is atque e *the terminations is and e;* ut *as,* laurus *a bay tree,* necnon *and* ficus *a fig,* domus *a house,* altaque pinus *and lofty pine,* et *and* colus *a distaff,* et *and* cornus *a cornel tree,* cupressusque *and the cypress* invisa *hated* vivis *by the living.* (*v.* 62—66.)

AS IN PRÆSENTI, &c.

OR,

THE RULES FOR VERBS,

CONSTRUED.

I. AS in præsenti *a verb making* as *in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the perfect tense* in avi: ut *as*, no nas *to swim* navi, vocito vocitas *to call often* vocitavi. Deme *except* lavo *to wash* lavi, juvo *to help* juvi, quin *moreover* cubo *to lie* semper dat *always makes* cubui, seco *to cut* dat *makes* secui, mico *to shine* reddit *gives* micui, sic *so* frico *to rub* dat *makes* fricui, domo *to tame* dat *makes* domui, a *from* sono *to sound* sonui formatur *is formed*, tonoque *and to thunder* generabit *will make* tonui. Adde tibi *add* crepo *to crack*, quod *which makes* crepui, veto *to forbid*, quod *which* dat *makes* vetui. Interdum *sometimes* neco *to kill* dat *makes* necui, plerumque *usually* necavi, applico *to apply* sæpius dabit *will oftener give* applicui, rariùs *more seldom* -avi ; at *but* supplico *to supplicate* multiplico *to multiply* semper formantur *are always formed in* -avi. Do das *to give* vult *will* formare *form* ritè *by custom* dedi, sto stas *to stand* steti. ✓ (*v.* 1—11.)

II. ES in præsenti *a verb making* es *in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the perfect tense* dans ui *by* ui; ut *as* nigreo nigres *to grow black* nigrui : moneo *to advise* dat *makes* monui, et *and* langueo *to languish* fugiens *avoiding* geminum u *the double u* habebit *will have* langui. Sed *but* ingenuus puer *the well-bred boy* videbit *will see* multa *many words* excipienda *to be excepted*. Veo, fit *becomes* vi, ut *as* moveo *to move* movi, caveo quoque *also to beware of* cavi, ferveo item *also to be hot* habebit *will have* fervi, sed *but* sæpe *often* et *also* fervui. Fleo fles *to weep* dat *makes* flevi, neo *to spin* nevi, deleo *to efface* format *forms* delevi, exoleo *to fade*, et verbum simile omne *and every similar word* dat *makes* -evi. Compleo *to fill* format *forms* complevi, repleoque *and to fill* replevi;

cieo *to summon* dat *makes* civi, sed *but* præteritum *the perfect* raro exstat *is seldom seen.* Plurima sunt *there are many verbs* quorum perfectum *whose perfect* desinit in si *ends in si,* ut *as* jubeo *to order* jussi, maneo *to remain* mansi, et *and* ardeo *to burn* arsi, mulceo *to soothe* mulsi, suadeo *to advise* suasi, rideo *to smile* risi, sic *so* hæreo *to stick* formabit *will form* hæsi, torqueo *to twist* torsi. (*v.* 12—25.)

Si *if* l vel r *l or r* stet *stands* ante *before* geo, geo vertitur *is changed* in si *into si:* ut *as* urgeo *to urge* ursi, mulgeo *to milk* mulsi, fulgeo *to shine* fulsi. Sunt etiam *there are some too* in deo *ending in deo* quæ *which* di dent *make di,* prandeo *to dine* prandi, et *and* video *to see,* sedeo *to sit,* assideo *to sit by,* sic *so* strideo *to hiss* stridi.—Quatuor *four* formantur *are formed in* xi *in xi,* sic *so* frigeo *to be cold* frixi, et *and* augeo *to increase* auxi, luceo *to shine* lugeo quoque *and to grieve* habent *have* luxi.—Syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is repeated* quatuor his infra *in these four verbs below;* namque *for* pendeo *to hang* vult *will have* pependi, mordeoque *and to bite* momordi, spondeo *to promise* spospondi, tondeo *to shear* vult habere *will have* totondi.—Tria verba *three verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam passivi solam *the form of the passive voice only:* gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus, soleo *to be accustomed* solitus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus; quin *moreover* pauca *a few* carent *want* perfecto *the perfect,* ut *as* mœreo *to grieve* monstrat *shows,* atque *and* aveo *to wish,* atque *and* hebeo *to be dull,* scateo *to be full,* vegeo *to be vigorous,* immineoque *and to impend,* atque *and* aliæ voces *other words* quas *which* usus *practice* rite docebit *will shew thoroughly.* (*v.* 26—39.)

III. TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the perfect tense* ut *as* manifestum *is shewn* hic *here.* (*v.* 40.)

Bo fit *is made* psi, ceu *as* scribo *to write* scripsi, sed *but* bibo *to drink,* lambo *to lick,* et *and* scabo *to scratch,* faciunt *make* bi, quin *moreover* occumbo *to lie down* dat *makes* occubui. (*v.* 41, 42.)

Co fit *becomes* xi, ut *as* dico *to say* dixi, sed *but* parco *to spare* peperci, et *and* vinco *to conquer* vici, sic *so* ico *to strike,* vetus *an old word,* facit *makes* ici. (*v.* 43, 44.)

Sco fit *becomes* vi, ut *as* pasco *to feed* pavi ; attamen *but* inde profectum *its compound* compesco *to check* format *forms* compescui, et *and* adjice *add* disco *to learn* quod *which* semper *always* format *forms* didici, poscoque *and to ask forms* poposci.—Verba inceptiva *inceptive verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam *the form* simplicium *of the simple verbs from which they are derived,* nam *for* caleo *to be warm* format *forms* calui, calescoque *and to begin to be warm makes also* calui ; glisco *to grow,* atque *and* fatisco *to split* jactant *boast of* perfectum nullum *no perfect tense,* cum paucis aliis *with a few others* rite profectis *regularly derived* a nomine *from a noun.*

(v. 45—51.)

Do fit *becomes* si, ut *as* claudo *to shut* clausi, cedo *to yield* geminans s *doubling the s* dat *makes* cessi ; pauca *a few* dabunt *will make* di, ut *as* scando *to climb,* prehendo *to take,* accendo *to inflame,* cudo *to hammer,* mando *to eat,* defendo *to defend,* edo *to eat,* pando *to lay open,* et *and* strido *to creak,* sido *to sit ;* findo *to cleave,* et *and* fundo *to pour* abjiciunt n *throw away n,* inde *thence come* fidi, fudi ; rudo *to brag* dat *gives* rudivi, rarum *a rare form:* quinetiam *moreover* paucis *in a few words* syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is doubled,* pendo *to weigh makes* pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, cædo *to beat* cĕcĭdi, et *and* cado *to fall* dat *gives* cĕcĭdi, tundo *to beat,* tutudi ; ultima vero *but the last syllable* plerumque *usually* geminatur *is doubled* in natis *in words compounded* a *of* do *to give, ut as* edo *to utter,* abdo *to hide,* condo *to build,* reddoque *and to restore,* et *and* cætera *the rest* formant *form* didi : videbis tamen *yet you will see* abscondo *that to hide* formare *forms* abscondi, fido *to trust* habebit *will have* formam *the form* passivi *of the passive,* fisus sum. (v. 52—63.)

Go [illegible] *is made* xi, ut *as* jungo *to join* junxi ; sed *but* r *the letter r* ante *before* go, vult *will have* si ; ut *as* spargo *to sprinkle* sparsi ; lego *to read* legi, et *and* ago *to act* facit *makes* egi ; et *and* frango *to break* fregi, pango pro *for* figere *to fasten* panxi ; inde tamen compôsta *but its compounds* semper tibi dabunt *will always give you* -pegi ; cùm *when* cernis *you see* pepigi, præsens *the present tense* plerumque *usually* est *is* paciscor *to covenant;* tango *to touch* dat *gives* tetigi, pungo *to prick* dabit *will give* ordine *in order* pupugi, sed *but* compôsta *its*

compounds make -punxi; ambigo *to doubt,* vergo *to incline,* carent *are without* perfecto *the perfect tense.* (*v.* 64—70.)

Guo, format tibi *forms* xi; ceu *as* restinguo *to extinguish* restinxi. (*v.* 71.)

Ho, fit *is made* xi; ceu *as* traho *to draw* traxi docet *shews,* et *and* veho *to carry* vexi. (*v.* 72.)

Lo, fit *is made* ui; ceu *as* colo *to till* colui: excipe *except* psallo *to play upon an instrument* psalli; excello *to excel* sequitur *follows* legem *the regular rule,* sed *but* percello *to strike* habebit *will have* perculi; pello *to drive away* dat *makes* pepuli, fallo *to deceive* fefelli, vello *to pluck* dat tibi *gives you* sæpius *usually* velli, est ubi *sometimes* vulsi. (*v.* 73—76.)

Mo, fit *becomes* mpsi; ceu *as* como *to deck the hair* compsi, at *but* emo *to buy* facit *makes* emi. Deinde *then* vomoque *both to vomit,* fremoque *and to roar,* gemoque *and to groan,* tremoque *and to tremble* sequuntur *follow;* quæ *which* dabunt *will give* perfecta *their perfects* per ui *in ui;* et *and* premo *to press* dabit *will give* pressi. (*v.* 77—79.)

No, fit *becomes* vi; ceu *as* sino *to permit* sivi; quin *moreover* cerno *to see* ordine mutato *changing the order of its letters makes* crevi, sic *so does* sperno *to despise,* sternoque *and to strew makes* stravi, gigno *to beget,* pono *to put,* cano *to sing,* dant *make* genui, posui, cecini; cujus compôsta *whose compounds* dant ui *make ui,* ut *as* concino *to sing together* concinui. (*v.* 80—83.)

Po, fit *becomes* psi; ut *as* sculpo *to carve* sculpsi, carpo quoque *also to gather makes* carpsi; sed *but* rumpo *to break* semper *always* format *makes* rupi, strepo *to roar* strepui. (*v.* 84, 85.)

Quo, fit *becomes* xi; ceu *as* coquo *to cook* coxi, excipe *except* linquo *to leave* liqui. (*v.* 86.)

Ro, fit *becomes* si, sæpe s geminato *s being often doubled,* quod *which* gero *to carry* monstrat *shews,* dans *making* gessi; tero *to rub* dat *makes* trivi, curroque *and to run makes* cucurri, quæro *to seek* quæsivi, neque enim *nor let* fero *to bear* prætereatur *be passed over,* quod *which* habet *has* tuli, sero *to sow* dat *makes* sevi, sed *but* compôsta ejus *its compounds* insero *to ingraft or insert among,* consero *to plant together or to connect,* dant *make* et *both* -sevi et *and* -serui, formâ *the form*

mutatâ *varying* ad sensum *with the sense;* sed *but* desero *to desert* item *also* assero *to assert* formant *form* ui tantum *only ui;* furo *to rage* dat *gives* nullum præteritum *no perfect tense.* (*v.* 87—93.)

So, fit *becomes* si; ut *as* viso *to go to see* visi; adjice *add* pinso *to grind* pinsi, item *also making* pinsui; depso quoque *also to knead* depsui; at *but* omne -esso *every word ending in* esso dat *gives* -essivi, ut *as* arcesso *to send for,* incesso *to attack,* atque *and* lâcesso *to provoke* probat *proves.* (*v.* 94—96.)

To, fit *is made* ti; ut *as* verto *to turn* verti; sic *so* verso ordine *changing the order of the letters* obstiti fluit *proceeds* ab *from* obsisto *to oppose,* adde *add* insisto *to stand upon,* resisto *to resist;* mitto *to send* dat *gives* misi, peto *to ask* vult formare *will form* petivi, sterto *to snore* habet *has* stertui, meto *to reap* messui: ab *from* -ecto fit *is made* -exi, ut *as* flecto *to bend* flexi; necto *to weave* dat *gives* nexui, habetque *and it has* nexi, sic *so* pecto *to comb* dat *gives* pexui, habet quoque *and also has* pexi. (*v.* 97—102.)

Vo, fit *is made* vi; ut *as* volvo *to roll* volvi; excipe *except* vivo *to live* vixi. (*v.* 103.)

Xo, habet *has* xui; ut *as* texo *to weave,* quod *which* habebit *will have* texui, monstrat *sheweth.* (*v.* 104.)

Cio, fit *is made* ci; ut *as* facio *to do* feci; quoque *also* jacio *to cast* jeci: allicio *to allure* allexi, elicio *to elicit* format tibi *gives you* elicui. Aspicio *to behold makes* aspexi, sic *so* conspicio *to see* inspicioque *and to inspect.* (*v.* 105—107.)

Dio, fit *is made* di; ut *as* fodio *to dig* fodi.
Gio, fit *is made* gi; ceu *as* fugio *to fly* fugi. } (*v.* 108.)

Pio, fit *is made* pi; ut *as* capio *to take* cepi; ecce *behold* cupio *to desire* cupivi, et *and* rapio *to snatch* rapui, sapio *to savour or taste* sapui, atque *and* sapivi. (*v.* 109, 110.)

Pario *to bring forth* dat *gives* peperi, concutio *to shake* dat *gives* concussi. (*v.* 111.)

Denique *finally,* Uo fit *is made* ui; ut *as* statuo *to erect* statui; pluo *to rain* format *formeth* pluvi, sive *or* plui, sed *but* struo *to build makes* struxi, fluo *to flow* fluxi. (*v.* 112, 113.)

Compositum *the compound verb* sequitur *follows* simplex

the simple one, sed *but* semper *always* syllaba *a syllable* quam *which* simplex *the simple verb* geminat *redoubles* non geminatur *is not doubled* compôsto *in the compound.*
(*v.* 114, 115.)

IV. QUARTA *the fourth conjugation* dat *makes* is *in the present tense,* ivi *in the preterperfect;* ut *as* scio scis *to know,* scivi, monstrat tibi *shews you.* Excipias *you may except* venio *to come* dans *making* veni, raucio *to be hoarse* rausi, item *also* haurio *to draw* hausi, farcio *to stuff* farsi, fulcio *to prop* fulsi, sarcio *to patch* sarsi, sentio *to feel* sensi, sepio *to hedge* sepsi, sancio *to establish* sanxi, vincio *to bind* vinxi; tum *then* tria verba *three verbs* formantur *are formed* per ui *in ui,* salio *to leap,* aperio *to open,* operioque *and to cover;* comperio *to find* mutat *changes* rio, in ri *into ri,* reperioque *and to find;* ferio *to strike* atque *and* superbio *to be proud* præbent *afford* perfectum nullum *no perfect tense.* (*v.* 116—123.)

V. VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs,* si *if* componantur *they are compounded,* mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* præteritique *and of the perfect tense* in e *into e;* damno *to condemn,* lacto *to suckle,* sacro *to dedicate,* fallo *to deceive,* arceo *to drive away,* tracto *to handle,* fatiscor *to be weary,* cando *to burn,* (vetus *an old word*) capto *to lie in wait,* jacto *to throw,* patior *to suffer,* gradiorque *and to step,* partio *to divide,* carpo *to crop,* patro *to achieve or finish,* scando *to climb,* sic *so* farcio *to stuff,* spargo *to sprinkle.* (*v.* 124—128.)

VI. HÆC *these verbs,* habeo *to have,* lateo *to lie hid,* salio *to leap,* statuo *to erect,* cado *to fall,* lædo *to hurt,* tango *to touch,* cano *to sing,* placeo *to please,* teneo *to hold,* sic *so* cædo cecidi *to beat,* quæro *to seek,* egeo *to want,* fateor *to confess,* taceo *to hold one's peace,* sapio *to savour,* rapioque *and to snatch,* si *if* componantur *they are compounded,* mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* in i *into i;* ut *as,* rapio *to snatch,* eripio *to take away by force.* (*v.* 129—133.)

Sed *but* hæc duo *these two compounds,* complaceo *to please,* cum *with* perplaceo *to please very much,* benè servant *steadily keep* usum *the use* simplicis verbi *of the simple verb.*
(*v.* 133, 134.)

Composita *the compounds* à *of* verbis *the verbs* calco *to tread,* salto *to leap or dance,* mutant *change* a per u *a into u;* conculco *to tread upon,* inculco *to tread in,* resulto *to rebound,* demonstrant *shew* id *that* tibi *to you.* (*v.* 135, 136.)

Composita *the compounds* à *of* claudo *to shut,* quatio *to shake,* lavo *to wash,* rejiciunt a *cast away a;* occludo *to shut against,* excludo *to shut out,* à *from* claudo *to shut,* docet *teaches* id *this;* que *and* percutio *to strike,* excutio *to strike out,* à *from* quatio *to shake;* à *from* lavo *to wash,* nata *the compounds* proluo *to drench,* diluo *to wash out.* (*v.* 137—139.)

Plaudo *to applaud* mutat *changes* au *into* o, quod *which* displodo *to burst* monstrat tibi *shews you.* (*v.* 140.)

VII. SI *if* componas *you compound* hæc *these verbs,* ago *to act,* emo *to buy,* sedeo *to sit,* rego *to rule,* frango *to break,* et *and* capio *to take,* jacio *to cast,* lacio *to allure,* specio *to behold,* premo *to press,* pango *to fasten,* sibi mutant *they change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* in i *into i,* nunquam *never* præteriti *of the perfect tense;* ceu *as of* frango *to break,* refringo *to break open, makes* refregi; incipio *to begin* incepi, à *of* capio *to take:* sed *but* pauca *let a few* notentur *be marked;* namque *for* perago *to finish* sequitur *follows* suum simplex *its simple verb,* que *and* satago *to be busy;* atque *and* dego *to live,* ab *from* ago *to act,* dat *makes* degi, cogo *to bring together* coëgi; sic *so* à *from* rego *to rule,* pergo *to go forward, makes* perrexi, quoque *and* surgo *to rise* vult *will have* surrexi; mediâ syllabâ *the middle syllable* præsentis *of the present tense* ademptâ *being taken away.* (*v.* 141—149.)

Ista quatuor composita *these four compound verbs* à *of* pango *to fix or fasten* retinent a *keep a,* depango *to fix in the ground,* oppango *to fasten against,* circumpango *to fasten about,* atque *and* repango *to fasten again.* (*v.* 150, 151.)

Facio *to do* variat *changeth* nil *nothing,* nisi *unless* præposito præëunte *a preposition goes before:* olfacio *to smell out* docet *teaches* id *that,* cum *with* calfacio *to make hot,* que *and* inficio *to infect.* (*v.* 152, 153.)

Nata *the compounds* à *of* lego *to read,* re, per, præ, sub,

trans, ad, præëunte *going before,* servant *keep* vocalem *the vowel* præsentis *of the present tense;* cætera *the rest* mutant *change it* in i *into i;* de quibus *of which* hæc *these* tantùm *only,* intelligo *to understand,* diligo *to love,* negligo *to neglect,* faciunt *make* præteritum *their perfect tense* lexi; reliqua omnia *all the rest* legi. (*v.* 154—157.)

VIII. NUNC *now* discas *you may learn* formare *to form* supinum *the supine* ex præterito *from the perfect tense.* (*v.* 158.)

Unum perfectum *one perfect tense* in bi, bibi *to drink,* vult formare *will form* bibitum. (*v.* 159.)

Ci, fit *is made* ctum, ut *as* vici *to overcome* victum, testatur *shews,* et *and* ici *to smite* dans *making* ictum, feci *to do* factum, quoque *also* jeci *to cast* jactum. (*v.* 160-1.)

Di, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* vidi *to see* visum: quædam *some* geminant s *double s;* ut *as* pandi *to open* passum, sedi *to sit* sessum, adde *add* scidi *to cut* quod *which* dat *makes* scissum, atque *and* fidi *to cleave* fissum, quoque *also* fodi *to dig* fossum. (*v.* 162—164.)

Prima syllaba *the first syllable* non geminatur *is not doubled* ullis supinis *in any supines:* idque *and this* totondi *to clip or shear,* dans *making* tonsum, docet *shews,* atque *and* cecidi *to beat,* quod *which maketh* cæsum, et *and* cecidi *to fall,* quod *which* dat *maketh* casum, atque *and* tetendi *to bend,* quod *which maketh* tensum, et *also* tentum, tutudi *to beat or pound* tunsum, atque *and* dedi *to give,* quod *which* jure *by right* poscit *requires* datum, sic *so* quot *as many as* nascuntur *are derived* ab illo *from it,* ut *as* addidi *to add* habet *has* additum, atque *and* momordi *to bite* vult *will have* morsum. (*v.* 165—170.)

Gi, fit *is made* ctum; ut *as* legi *to read* lectum; pegi *to fasten* que *and* pepigi *to covenant* dant *make* pactum, fregi *to break* fractum, quoque *also* tetigi *to touch* tactum, egi *to act* actum, pupugi *to prick* punctum; fugi *to flee* dat *makes* fugitum. (*v.* 171—173.)

Li, fit *becomes* sulh; ut *as* pepuli *to drive away* pulsum; sic *so* rite *regularly* fefelli *to deceive* falsum, perculi *to strike* habet *has* perculsum, neve *and let not* tuli *to bear* aufugiat te

escape you, cui *in the case of which word* latum, semper *always* venit *has come* in usum *into use.* (*v.* 174—176.)

Mi, ni, pi, qui, sumunt *take* tum, velut *as* manifestum *is manifest* hìc *here:* emi *to buy* emptum, veni *to come* ventum, cecini, à *from* cano *to sing* cantum, cepi, à *from* capio *to take* captum, quoque *also* cœpi *to begin* cœptum, rupi, à *from* rumpo *to break* ruptum; quoque *also* liqui *to leave* lictum. (*v.* 177—180.)

Ri, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* verri *to brush* versum; excipe *except* peperi *to bring forth young* partum. (*v.* 181.)

Si, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* visi *to go to see* visum; quin *moreover* misi *to send* formabit *will form* missum, ss geminato *s being doubled;* excipe *except* fulsi *to prop* fultum, hausi *to draw* haustum, sarsi *to patch* sartum, quoque *also* farsi *to stuff* fartum, ussi *to burn* ustum, gessi *to bear* gestum; torsi *to wreathe* vindicat sibi *claims for itself* tortum, sic *so* indulsi *to indulge* format tibi *forms as you see* indultum. (*v.* 182—186.)

Psi, fit *is made* ptum; ut *as* scripsi *to write* scriptum, quoque *also* sculpsi *to engrave* sculptum. (*v.* 187.)

Ti, vult formare *will form* sum; ut *as* verti *to turn* versum; cùm *when* -stiti habet *has* supinum *a supine* erit *it will be* -statum, sed *but* vix valebis *you will scarcely be able* reperire *to find it.* (*v.* 188, 189.)

Vi, fit *is made* tum; ut *as* flavi *to blow* flatum: excipe *except* pavi *to feed cattle* pastum; lavi *to wash* dat *makes* lotum, interdum *sometimes* lautum, atque *and* lavatum; potavi *to drink* facit *makes* potum, venivi a *from* veneo *to be sold* venum; favi *to favour* dat *makes* fautum, cavi *to beware* cautum; à *from* sero sevi *to sow* ritè formes *you may rightly form* satum; disce *learn,* sepelivi *to bury* sepultum, et *and* singultivi *to sob* semper habebit *will always have* singultum; solvi, à *from* solvo *to loose* solutum, volvi, à *from* volvo *to roll* volutum. (*v.* 190—196.)

Quod *a verb that* dat *makes* ui, dat *makes* itum; ut *as* domui *to tame* domitum: excipe *except* quodvis verbum *every verb* in uo, quia *because* semper formabit *it will always form* ui in utum *ui in utum;* ut *as* exui *to put off* exutum: deme *except* rui, à *from* ruo *to rush,* dans *making* ruitum; secui *to*

cut vult *will have* sectum, necui *to slay* nectum, que *and* fricui *to rub* frictum, item *also* miscui *to mingle* mistum, quoque *also* docui *to teach* doctum; torrui *to roast* habet *hath* tostum, adjiceque *and add* continui *to contain* contentum, consului *to consult* consultum, alui *to feed* altum, que *and* alitum; sic *so* salui *to leap* saltum, colui *to till*, quoque *also* occului *to hide*, cultum; pinsui *to pound or grind* habet *hath* pistum, rapui *to snatch* raptum, que *and* serui, à *from* sero *to set in order*, vult *will have* sertum, sic *so* quoque *also* texui *to weave* habet *hath* textum. (*v.* 197—206.)

Censui *to judge* habet *hath* censum, messui *to reap* habebit *will have* quoque *also* messum; item *also* nexui *to knit* nexum, sic *so* quoque *also* pexui *to comb* habet *hath* pexum. (*v.* 207, 208.)

Xi, fit *is made* ctum; ut *as* vinxi *to bind* vinctum: quædam *some* abjiciunt n *cast away n;* ut *as* finxi *to form or fashion* semper dabit *will always give* fictum, adjice *add* pinxi *to paint* dans *giving* pictum, strinxi *to bind fast* strictum, quoque *also* rinxi *to grin* rictum. (*v.* 209—211.)

Flexi *to bend*, plexi *to twist*, fixi *to fasten*, dant *make* xum. et *and* fluo *to flow* fluxum. (*v.* 212.)

IX. QUODQUE compositum supinum *every compound supine* formatur *is formed* ut *as* simplex *the simple supine*, quamvis *although* eadem syllaba *the same syllable* non stet *does not continue* semper *always* utrique *to them both*. Composita *the compounds* à *of* tunsum *to pound*, n demptâ *by taking away n, make* tusum; à *of* ruitum *to rush*, i mediâ *the middle letter i* demptâ *being taken away*, fit *is made* rutum; et *and* quoque *also* à *of* saltum *to leap* sultum. Composita *the compounds* à *of* sero *to sow*, quando *when* format *it forms* satum, dant *make* situm. (*v.* 213—217.)

Hæc *these supines*, captum *to take*, factum *to do*, jactum *to cast*, raptum *to snatch*, mutant a per e *change a into e;* et *and* cantum *to sing*, partum *to bring forth young*, sparsum *to sprinkle*, carptum *to crop*, adjice *add* fartum *to stuff*. (*v.* 218, 219.)

A *from* nosco *to know* duo *these two compounds* tantùm

only, cognitum *to know* et *and* agnitum *to know again,* habentur *are found;* cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum: noscitum, jam *now* est *is* nullo in usu *not in use.* (*v.* 220, 221.)

X. VERBA in or *verbs ending in or* admittunt *take* præteritum *their perfect tense* ex posteriore supino *from the latter supine,* u verso *u being turned* per us *into us,* et *and* sum, vel *or* fui, consociato *being added;* ut *as* à *of* lectu *to be read* lectus sum, vel *or* fui, *I have been read:* at *but* horum *of these verbs* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* deponens *a deponent,* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* commune *a common* notandum *to be noted.* (*v.* 222—225.)

Nam *for* labor *to slide* dat *makes* lapsus; patior *to suffer* passus, et *and* ejus natum *its compound* perpetior *to endure,* formans *forming* perpessus; fateorque *and to own* dat *makes* fassus, confiteor *to confess* confessus, gradiorque *and to step* dat *makes* gressus, metior *to measure* dat *gives* mensus sum, et *and* utor *to use* usus. (*v.* 226—229.)

Ordior, pro *for* texo *to weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* incepto *to begin* orsus, nitor *to strive* nisus, vel *or* nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor *to revenge* ultus, simul *also* irascor *to be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor *to suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor *to forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor *to enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus, vel *or* fruitus; junge *add* misereri *to have pity* misertus, atque *and* miseritus; a *from* tuor *to see* et *and* tueor *to defend* tutus, que *and* tuitus; adde *add* locutus, à *of* loquor *to speak,* et *and* adde *add* secutus, à *of* sequor *to follow.* (*v.* 230—236.)

Experior *to try* facit *maketh* expertus; paciscor *to make a bargain* gaudet *will* formare *form* pactus sum, nanciscor *to get* nactus, apiscor *to obtain,* (quod *which* est *is* vetus verbum *an old verb*) aptus sum, undè *from whence* adipiscor *to get* adeptus. (*v.* 237—239.)

Junge *add* queror *to complain* questus, junge *add* proficiscor *to go* profectus, expergiscor *to awake* experrectus sum; et *and* quoque *also* hæc *these,* comminiscor *to devise* commentus, nascor *to be born* natus, moriorque *and to die* mortuus, atque *and* orior *to rise,* quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its perfect tense* ortus. (*v.* 240—243.)

Medeor *to remedy,* vescor *to feed upon,* liquorque *and to*

melt carebunt *will want* perfecto *the perfect tense;* sic quoque *so also* diffiteor *to disown,* sic *so* ringor *to grin,* sic *so* reminiscor *to remember.* (*v.* 244, 245.)

XI. HÆC *these verbs* habent *have* præteritum *a perfect tense* activæ *of the active* et *and* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice.* (*v.* 246.)

Nubo *to be married* nupsi, que *and* nupta sum, placeo *to please* dat *gives* placui et *and* placitus, et *and* libet *it pleaseth* libuit libitum, et *and* adde *add* licet *it is lawful,* quod *which makes* licuit licitum; tædet *it wearieth,* quod *which* dat *makes* tæduit, et *and* pertæsum; adde *add* pudet *it shameth* faciens *making* puduit, que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget *it grieveth,* quod *which* tibi format *forms you* piguit, que *and* pigitum. (*v.* 247—251.)

XII. HÆC verba *these verbs* rarò *seldom* aut *or* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine:* lambo *to lick,* mico micui *to glitter,* rudo *to bray as an ass,* scabo *to claw,* parco peperci *to spare,* dispesco *to drive from pasture,* posco *to require,* compesco *to restrain,* atque *and* adjice *add* disco *to learn,* dego *to live,* ango *to throttle,* sugo *to suck,* lingo *to lick,* ningo *to snow,* que *and* satago *to be busy,* psallo *to play on an instrument,* volo *to be willing,* nolo *to be unwilling,* malo *to be more willing,* tremo *to tremble,* strideo stridi *to screak,* flaveo *to be yellow,* liveo *to be black and blue,* avet *to covet,* paveo *to dread,* conniveo *to wink,* fervet *to be hot.* Compositum *a compound* à *of* nuo *to nod;* ut *as,* renuo *to refuse:* à *of* cado *to fall;* ut *as,* accido *to happen;* præter *except* occido *to fall down,* quod *which* facit *makes* occasum, que *and* recido *to fall back* recasum: respuo *to refuse,* sic *so* metuo *to fear,* cluo *to shine or to be famous,* frigeo *to be cold,* calveo *to be bald,* sterto *to snore,* sic etiam *so also* timeo *to fear;* sic *so* luceo *to shine,* et *and* arceo *to drive away,* cujus composita *whose compounds* habent *have* -ercitum; sic *so* nata *the compounds* à *of* gruo *to cry like a crane,* ut *as* ingruo *to invade;* et *and* quæcunque neutra *whatever neuters* secundæ *of the second conjugation* formantur *are formed* in ui; excipias *you may except* oleo *to smell,* doleo

to be in pain, placeo *to please*, que *and* taceo *to hold one's peace*, pareo *to obey*, item *also* careo *to want*, noceo *to hurt*, jaceo *to lie down*, que *and* lateo *to lie hid*, et *also* valeo *to be in health*, caleo *to be hot*; namque *for* hæc *these verbs* gaudent supino *have their supines.* (*v.* 252—266.)

SYNTAXIS CONSTRUED.

1. VERBUM personale *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero *in number* et *and* personâ *person:* ut *as,* Ego loquor *I speak.* Homineo *men* audiunt *hear.*

2. Nominativus *the nominative case* pronominum *of pronouns* omittitur *is omitted,* nisi *unless* gratiâ *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction,* aut *or* emphasis *energy of expression:* ut *as,* Ego *I* ejeci *drove out* reges *kings,* vos *ye* introducitis *are introducing* tyrannos *tyrants.* Auditis *do ye hear,* an *or* amabalis insania *does a pleasing delusion* ludit me *deceive me?* Videor *I seem* audire *to hear* et *and* errare *to be wandering* per *among* pios lucos *holy groves.* Possunt *they are able* quia *because* videntur *they seem to themselves* posse *to be able.*

3. Aliquando *sometimes* verbum *a verb* infinitivi modi *of the infinitive mood* usurpatur *is used* pro nominativo *for the nominative* vel *or* pro *for* accusativo casu *the accusative case* nominis *of a noun:* ut *as,* Didicisse *to have learnt* ingenuas artes *the liberal sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens much* mores *men's manners,* nec sinit *and suffers them not* esse *to be* feros *brutal.* Quod crimen *what crime* dicis *do you say* meum *is mine,* præter *except* amâsse *to have loved?*

4. Cùm *when* duo sunt nomina *there are two nouns* diversarum personarum *of different persons,* verbum *the verb* concordat *agrees* cum *with* personâ digniore *the more worthy person:* ut *as,* Si *if* tu *you* et *and* Tullia *Tullia* valetis *are well* ego *I* et *and* suavissimus Cicero *our dearest Cicero* valemus *are well.*

5. Cùm *when* unum verbum *one verb* sequitur *follows* duo aut plura nomina *two or more nouns* singularis numeri *of the singular number,* plerumque *usually* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural,* si *if* agitur *one is speaking* de animantibus *of living objects,* si *if* de rebus *one is speaking of things,* vel in plurali *the verb is put either in the plural* vel in singulari *or in the singular:* ut *as,* Castor et *and* Pollux visi sunt *were seen* pugnare *to fight* ex equis *on horseback* apud Regillum *at lake Regillus.* Cùm *when* tempus *the occasion* necessitasque *and necessity* postulat *requires,* decertandum est *one must fight* manu *with one's own hand.* Beneficium *kindness* et *and* gratia *gratitude* conjungunt *join* homines *men* inter se *together*

SOCIETY

6. Cùm *when* nomen *a noun* singularis numeri *of the singular number* indicat *denotes* multitudinem *a multitude,* sæpe jungitur *it is often joined* verbo plurali *to a plural verb:* ut *as,* Turba *the crowd* tenent *occupy* atria *the halls,* leve vulgus *the fickle mob* veniunt *come* euntque *and go.* Uterque eorum *each of them* educunt *draw out* exercitum *their army* ex castris *from the camp.*

(a.) Sic *so* et *also* adverbium *the adverb* partim *partly* aliquando *sometimes* usurpatur *is used* cum *with* genitivo plurali nominis *the genitive plural of the noun,* ceu *as* nomen ipsum *the noun itself:* ut *as,* Partim eorum *part of them* sunt *are* timidi *cowardly,* partim *part* aversi *disaffected* a republicâ *to the republic.* Partim eorum *part of these things* ficta sunt aperte *were openly invented,* partim *part* effutita *uttered* temere *at random.*

7. Verbum *a verb* positum *placed* inter *between* duos nominativos *two nominative cases* ejusdem personæ *of the same person* sed *but* diversorum numerorum *of different numbers* potest concordare *may agree* cum *with* alterutro *either,* sed *but* fere *usually* concordat *does agree* cum posteriore *with the latter:* ut *as,* Iræ *the quarrels* amantium *of lovers* integratio est *are the renewing* amoris *of love.* Pectus quoque *her breast also* fiunt robora *becomes oak.* Omnia *everything* pontus erant *was sea.*

8. Pro nominativo *instead of a nominative case* accusativus *an accusative* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* dicendi *of saying,* audiendi *of hearing,* sciendi *of knowing,* putandi *of thinking,* et similia *and the like,* et verbum sum *and the verb sum,* verbo infinitivo *a verb in the infinitive mood* sequente *following:* ut *as,* Audivit *he heard* nos *that we* venire *were coming.* Scribit *he writes word* bellum *that the war* confectum esse *is finished.* Fama est *a report exists* Enceladum *that Enceladus* urgeri *is overwhelmed* mole hâc *by this mass.*

(a.) Infinitivus modus *the infinitive mood* futuri temporis *of the future tense* plerumque *generally* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* sperandi *of hoping* et *and* promittendi *of promising:* ut *as,* Promitto *I promise* me *that I* observaturum esse *will observe* hæc *these things.* Spero *I hope* fore ut contingat id *that that will happen* nobis *to us.*

9. ADJECTIVA *adjectives,* participia *participles,* et *and* pronomina *pronouns,* concordant *agree* cum *with* substantivo

the substantive genere *in gender,* numero *in number,* et *and* casu *in case:* ut *as,* Rara avis *an uncommon bird* in terris *in the world,* simillimaque *and very much like* nigro cygno *a black swan.*

10. Cùm *when* verbum *a verb* infinitivi modi *of the infinitive mood,* aut *or* pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* usurpatur *is used* pro substantivo *instead of a substantive,* habetur *it is considered* neutrius generis *of the neuter gender:* ut *as,* Irasci *to be angry* est *is* humanum *a human error.*

11. Cùm *when* plura sunt substantiva *there are many substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders,* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat *agrees* cum *with* digniore genere *the more worthy gender,* si *if* agitur *one is speaking* de animantibus *of living objects,* et *and* si *if* ponitur *it is put* in numero plurali *in the plural number:* ut *as,* Pater mihi *my father* et mater *and mother* mortui sunt *have been dead* jampridem *long since.*

12. Si vero *but if* agitur de rebus *things are spoken of,* adjectivum *the adjective* sæpe ponitur *is often put* in neutro *in the neuter gender:* ut *as,* Secundæ res *prosperity,* honores *honours,* imperia *commands,* victoriæ *victories,* fortuita sunt *depend on chance.*

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat *agrees* cum proximo substantivo *with the nearest substantive* cujuscunque generis sit *of whatever gender it is,* præsertim *especially* cùm *when* ponitur *it is put* in singulari numero *in the singular number:* ut *as,* Animus *the intention,* et *and* consilium *the purpose,* et *and* sententia *the opinion* civitatis *of the state* posita est *have been expressed* in legibus *in the laws.*

13. Aliquando *sometimes* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat *agrees* cum substantivo *with a substantive* quod *which* significatur *is implied,* non cum eo *not with that* quod *which* exprimitur *is expressed:* ut *as,* Auxilia Thracum *the auxiliary force of the Thracians,* cùm *as* pars *part* adjacerent *lay close* munitionibus *to the fortifications,* cæsi sunt *were slain.*

14. Aliquando *sometimes* nullum substantivum *no substantive* exprimitur *is expressed,* sed *but* adjectivum *the adjective* usurpatur *is used* pro substantivo *for a substantive:* ut *as,* Loquor *I am saying* mira *strange things.* Multi *many men* libenter *willingly* oppetierunt mortem *have sought death* pro patriâ *for their country.*

15. RELATIVUM *the relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* antecedente *the antecedent* genere *in gender*, numero *in number*, et *and* personâ *in person:* ut *as*, Ego sum *I am* ille consul *that consul* qui *who* servavi *saved* Romam *Rome*. Contemnimus *we despise* hominem *a man* qui *who* amat *loves* mendacia *lies*.

16. Quoniam *since* relativum *the relative* adjectivum est *is an adjective*, sequitur *it follows* easdem leges *the same laws* de genere *as to gender* quas *as* adjectivum *an adjective:* ut *as*, Eæ fruges *these crops* atque fructus *and fruits* quos *which* terra *the earth* gignit *produces*. Duo importuna prodigia *the two prodigies of wickedness* quos *whom* improbitas *their profligacy* addixerat constrictos *had bound* tribuno plebis *to the tribune of the people*. Ubi est *where is* illud scelus *that wicked man* qui *who* perdidit me *has undone me?*

17. Aliquando *sometimes* sententia *a sentence* aut *or* pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* ponitur *is put* pro *for* antecedente *an antecedent:* ut *as*, Veni *I came* ad eam *to her* in tempore *in season*, quod *which* est *is* rerum omnium primum *the main business of all*.

18. Relativum *a relative* collocatum *placed* inter *between* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders* et *and* numerorum *numbers* concordat *agrees* sæpe *often* cum *with* posteriore *the latter substantive:* ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

(a.) Relativum *a relative* sæpe ponitur *is often put* Latinè *in Latin* ubi *where* in nostro sermone *in our language* utimur *we use* pronomine *a pronoun* cum conjunctione *with a conjunction:* ut *as*, Si *if*, pater *O father*, scîsses *you had known* hoc *this*, cujus pietatis es *such is your piety*, nemo *no one* antecessisset te *would have outdone you*. Et tamen *and yet*, quæ jam patientia nostra est *so great is our patience*, spernimur *we are despised* in cœlo *in heaven*. Pater tuus si viveret *if your father were alive*, quâ severitate fuit *such was his severity*, tu profecto *you in truth* non viveres *would not be alive*. Jussit hoc *he ordered this*, quod si fecissem *but if I had done it* perdidissem *I should have ruined* omnia *every thing*.

19. Aliquando *sometimes* relativum *a relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* primitivo *the primitive*, quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive:* ut *as*, Hoc *this* maxime interest vestrâ *is of the greatest consequence to you*, qui *who* vixistis *have lived* cum summâ integritate *with the greatest integrity*.

(a.) Cum *when* relativum *the relative* refertur *is referred* ad nomen *to a noun* multitudinis *of multitude*, aliquando *sometimes* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural:* ut *as*, Cæsar *Cæsar* præmittit *sends on* omnem equitatum *all the cavalry*, qui videant *to see* quas in partes *in which direction* hostes *the enemy* iter faciant *is marching.*

20. Si *if* nominativus *a nominative case* interponatur *is put between* relativo *the relative* et *and* verbo *the verb*, relativum *the relative* regitur *is governed* a verbo *by the verb*, aut *or* ab aliâ dictione *by some other word* quæ *which* locatur *is placed* in oratione *in the sentence* cum verbo *with the verb:* ut *as*, Peto *I demand* te *you* quem *whom* merui *I have deserved.* Cujus numen *whose deity* adoro *I adore.*

(a.) Cùm *when* relativum *the relative* adjungitur *is joined* superlativo *to an adjective in the superlative degree*, superlativum *the superlative* ponitur *is put* in eodem sententiæ membro *in the same member of the sentence* quo *as* relativum *the relative:* ut *as*, Themistocles *Themistocles* misit *sent* servum quem fidelissimum habuit *the most faithful slave he had* ad Xerxem *to Xerxes.*

21. DUO substantiva *two substantives* rei ejusdem *meaning the same thing* ponuntur *are put* in eodem casu *in the same case:* ut *as*, Opes *riches* effodiuntur *are dug up*, irritamenta *the incentives* malorum *to evil.*

22. Quum *when* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversæ significationis *of a different signification* concurrunt *meet together*, posterius *the latter* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive case:* ut *as*, Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases* quantùm *as much as* ipsia pecunia *the money itself* crescit *increases.*

23. Adjectivum *an adjective* in neutro genere *of the neuter gender* positum *put* pro substantivo *instead of a substantive*, postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Dedi *I wrote* hoc literarum *this letter* ad te *to you.* Venerant *they had come* ad extremum *to the extremity* inopiæ *of want.* Ferimur *we are borne on* per opaca locorum *through shady places.*

24. Interdum *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive case* ponitur tantùm *is set alone*, priore substantivo *the former substantive* subaudito *being understood* per ellipsin *by the figure ellipsis:*

ut *as,* Ventum erat *we had come* ad Vestæ *to the temple of Vesta.* Hasdrubal *Hasdrubal* Gisgonis *the son of Gisgo.*

25. Substantivum *a substantive* denotans *denoting* qualitatem *quality,* adjuncto adjectivo *if an adjective be added,* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive* vel *or* in ablativo *in the ablative:* ut *as,* Titus *Titus* fuit *was* tantæ facilitatis *of such great kindness,* ut *that* negaret quicquam nemini *he never denied anything to any one.* Agesilaus *Agesilaus* fuit *was* staturâ humili *of low stature* et corpore exiguo *and of a slight body.*

(a.) Substantiva *substantives* derivata a verbis *derived from verbs* interdum *sometimes* admittunt *admit* eosdem casus *the same cases* post se *after them* quos *as* verba *the verbs* exigunt *require* a quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived:* ut *as,* Spe *all hope* reditionis *of a return* domum *home* sublatâ *being taken away.* Justitia *justice* est *is* obtemperatio *obedience* scriptis legibus *to written laws.*

26. Opus *need* et *and* usus *need* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* rei *of the thing,* cum dativo *with a dative* personæ *of the person:* ut *as,* Opus est nobis *we have need* auctoritate tuâ *of your authority.* Non accepit *he would not receive* pecuniam *money* ab iis *from them,* quâ *of which* sibi esset *he had* nihil usus *no need.*

(a.) Autem *but* opus, videtur *seems* quandoque *sometimes* poni *to be put* adjectivè *adjectively* pro *for* necessarius *necessary:* ut *as,* Dux *a leader* et *and* auctor *an adviser* est *is* opus *necessary* nobis *for us.*

27. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* vel *or* participia *participles* posita *put* pro adjectivis *for adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* cupidinem *desire,* scientiam *knowledge,* memoriam *memory,* timorem *fear,* diligentiam *diligence,* participationem *participation,* atque *and* contraria *the contraries* iis *to these,* cum plurimis aliis *with many others* quæ *which* denotant *denote* qualitatem *a quality* vel motum aliquem *or some passion* animi *of the mind,* exiguut *require* genitivum *a genitive case:* ut *as,* Pythagoras *Pythagoras* appellavit *called* studiosos *those who were fond* sapientiæ *of wisdom* philosophos *philosophers.* Mens *a mind* conscia recti *conscious of rectitude* ridet *laughs at* mendacia *the lies* famæ *of rumour.* Estote *be ye* jam nunc *even now* memores *mindful* venturæ senectæ *of coming old age.* Mens hominum *the mind of man* nescia *ignorant* fati *of fate*

sortisque futuræ *and his future lot.* Romani *the Romans* fuerunt *were* appetentes *eager after* gloriæ *glory* præter *beyond* cæteras gentes *all other nations.* Serpit *he creeps* humi *on the ground* tutus nimium *too cautious* timidusque *and afraid* procellæ *of a storm.* Vir *a man* diligentissimus *most diligent in* omnis officii *every duty.* Cæteræ *the others* possunt *can* habere *have* domi *at home* participem *one who shares* omnium fortunarum *all their fortunes.* Sæpe *often* anus *an old woman* potens voti *having gained her wish* redit *returns.*

(a.) Ex his *of these* particeps *sharing in* interdum *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* dativo *to a dative case* personæ *of the person:* ut *as,* Mater *the mother* particeps marito *sharing with her husband* in plerisque operibus *in most of the toils* ruris *of the country.*

(b.) Conscius *conscious* postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case* rei *of the thing,* dativum *a dative* personæ *of the person;* interdum *sometimes* etiam *even* jungitur *it is joined* dativo *to a dative* rei *of the thing,* personâ *the person* subauditâ *being understood:* ut *as,* Conscius sibi *conscious to himself* tanti sceleris *of such wickedness.* Mens tua *your mind* non debuit esse *ought not to have been* conscia *an accomplice in* huic facinori tanto *this enormous wickedness.*

28. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* copiam *plenty* egestatemve *or want* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case,* interdum *sometimes* etiam *also* ablativum *an ablative:* ut *as,* Dives *rich* equûm *in horses,* dives *rich* pictaï vestis *in embroidered garments,* et *and* auri *gold.* Dives *rich* agris *in lands,* dives *rich* nummis *in money* positis in fœnore *laid out at usury.* Non indiga *not in need of* opis nostræ *our aid.* Omnia *everything* plena sunt *is full* errorum *of blunders.* Animus humanus *the human mind* est *is* expers *free from* utriusque *each* harum *of these things.*

29. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* liberalitatem *liberality,* vel *or* contrarium *the contrary,* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case:* ut *as,* Liberalis *liberal* pecuniæ *of his money.* Non parcus *not sparing* veteris aceti *of his old vinegar.*

30. Proprius *peculiar to,* superstes *surviving,* communis *common,* cum *with* paucis aliis *a few others,* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case,* interdum etiam *sometimes also* dativum *a dative:* ut *as,* Libertas *liberty* est *is* propria *peculiar to* populi Romani *the Roman people.* Sumus superstites *we*

have survived aliorum *the others.* Hoc *this* commune est *is common* cupidorum potentiæ *to those desirous of power* cum otiosis *with the indolent.* Mors *death* est communis *is common* omni ætati *to every age.* Pomponius *Pomponius* superstes fuit *survived* Tiberio *Tiberius.*

(a.) Communis vero *but communis* nunquam jungitur *is never joined* pronomini personali *to a personal pronoun,* nisi *except* dativo *in the dative:* ut *as,* Hoc *this* commune est *is common* mihi *to me* tecum *and you.*

31. Alienus *foreign to* jungitur *is joined* genitivo *to a genitive case,* vel *or* dativo *to a dative,* vel *or* ablativo *to an ablative,* vel *or* ablativo *to an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as,* Censet *he thinks* hoc *this* alienum esse *to be inconsistent with* suæ dignitatis *his dignity.* Alienus *averse* ambitioni *to ambition.* Fraus *deceit* alienissima est *is very foreign to* homine *the nature of man.* Non alienus *not averse* a studiis *to the studies* Scævolæ *of Scævola.*

32. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* crimen *crime* vel *or* contrarium *the contrary* junguntur *are joined* genitivo *to a genitive case:* ut *as,* Regulus *Regulus* trahebat ad disquisitionem *brought to examination* collegam *his colleague,* ut *as* noxium *guilty* conjurationis *of the conspiracy.* Integer *innocent* vitæ *in life,* purusque *and free from* sceleris *wickedness.*

33. Adjectiva *adjectives* verbalia *derived from verbs* in ax *ending in ax* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case:* ut *as,* Tempus *time* edax *is the consumer* rerum *of all things.*

34. Adjectiva partitiva *partitive adjectives,* numeralia *adjectives of number,* comparativa *comparatives* et *and* superlativa *superlatives,* et *also* adjectiva *adjectives* posita *put* partitivè *partitively,* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case:* ut *as,* Accipe *take* utrum horum *which of these two* mavis *you had rather.* Romulus, fuit *was* primus *the first* Romanorum regum *of the Roman kings.* Dextra *the right* est *is* fortior *the stronger* manuum *of the hands,* Medius *the middle* est *is* longissimus *the longest* digitorum *of the fingers.* Sancte deorum *O sacred deity!* sequimur *we follow* te *you.*

(a) Usurpantur *they are used* et *also* cum his præpositionibus *with these prepositions,* de *of,* ex *of,* in *among,* inter *among:* ut *as,* Nam *for* alter *one* e vobis *of you* es Deus *is a God,* alter *the other* eris *will be.* Thales *Thales* fuit *was* sapientissimus *the wisest* in septem *of the seven.* Solus *the only one* de superis *of the gods* qui *who* vides *see* tua terga

your own back. Inter mille rates *among the thousand ships* tua puppis *let your vessel be* millesima *the thousandth.*

35. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* quibus *whereby* commodum *advantage,* similitudo *likeness,* aut iis similia *or anything like them* aut contraria *or contrary to them,* aut *or* relatio *relation* ad aliquid *to any thing* significatur *is signified,* postulant *require* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Si *if* facis *you take care* ut *that* sit *he be* idoneus *serviceable* patriæ *to his country,* utilis *useful* agris *to the lands.* Turba *a multitude* gravis *troublesome* paci *to peace,* que *and* inimica *averse* placidæ quieti *to gentle ease.* Similis *like* patri *his father.* Virtus *virtue* fructuosa *full of profit* aliis *to others,* laboriosa *full of toil* ipsi *for itself.* Color *the colour* qui *which* erat *was* albus *white* est *is* nunc *now* contrarius *contrary* albo *to white.* Socrates *Socrates* non fuit supplex *did not use entreaty* judicibus *to the judges.* Carus *dear* Dîs ipsis *to the Gods themselves.* Poeta *a poet* est *is* finitimus *very near akin* oratori *to an orator.*

(a) Quædam *some* ex his *of these adjectives,* quæ *which* significant *signify* similitudinem *likeness,* et *and* adjéctivum *the adjective* affinis *connected with,* junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* genitivo *to a genitive case:* ut *as,* Qui *those who* faciunt *think* mortem *death* leviorem *less momentous,* volunt *insist* esse *that it is* simillimam *very like* somni *sleep.* Affinis *connected with* hujus culpæ *this crime.*

36. Natus *born,* habilis *suitable,* commodus *convenient,* utilis *useful,* aptus *fit,* cum quibusdam aliis *with some others,* junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* accusativo *to an accusative case* cum *with* præpositione *a preposition:* ut *as,* Natus *born* ad gloriam *for glory.* Utilis *profitable* ad eam rem *to that business.*

37. Adjectiva verbalia *adjectives derived from verbs* in bilis *ending in bilis,* accepta *taken* passivè *passively,* postulant *require* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Lucus iners *a thick grove* penetrabilis *penetrable* nulli astro *by no star.*

38. Participia *participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice* postulant *require* dativum *a dative case* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as,* Mæcenas *O Mæcenas,* dicte *celebrated* mihi *by me* primâ Camœnâ *in my first poem,* dicende *to be celebrated* summâ *in my last.* Senex *the old man* dictus sapiens *called wise* ab Apolline *by Apollo.*

39. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* significantia *signifying* magnitudinem *magnitude* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Fossa *a ditch* undecim pedes lata *eleven feet wide.*

40. Natus *born* cùm *when* refertur *it refers* ad durationem temporis *to the duration of time* exigit *requires* accusativum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Undeviginti annos natus *nineteen years old.*

41. Accusativus *an accusative case* sæpe *often* a poetis subjicitur *is put by poets after* adjectivis *adjectives* et *and* participiis *participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice,* præsertim *especially* cùm *when* pars affecta *the part affected* indicatur *is indicated:* ut *as,* Similis Deo *like a God* os *as to his face* humerosque *and shoulders.* Flores *flowers* inscripti *inscribed with* nomina *the names* regum *of kings.* Stratus *prostrate* membra *as to one's limbs* nunc *at one time* viridi sub arbuto *under a green arbutus.*

42. Accusativus *an accusative case* sæpe *often* usurpatur *is used* in exclamationibus *in exclamations,* interjectione aliquâ *some interjection* subauditâ *being understood* a quâ *by which* reverà regitur *it is in reality governed:* ut *as,* Me cæcum *blind that I am* qui non viderim *not to have seen* hæc *this* ante *before.*

43. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying* causam *the cause,* aut *or* formam *the form,* vel *or* modum *the manner* rei *of a thing:* ut *as,* Par est *he is equal* illi *to him* scelere *in wickedness,* inferior *inferior* industriâ *in energy.* Cæsar, Trojanus *a Trojan* origine *by descent.*

44. Dignus *worthy,* indignus *unworthy,* præditus *endued,* contentus *content,* extorris *banished,* fretus *relying upon,* cum *with* adjectivis *adjectives* significantibus *signifying* pretium *price,* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case:* ut *as,* Es *you are* dignus *worthy* odio *of hatred.* Mens *the mind* prædita est *is endued* motu sempiterno *with perpetual motion.* Abi *go your way* contentus *contented* sorte tuâ *with your lot.* Extorris *banished from* agro Romano *the Roman territory.* Otium *ease* venale *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels* nec *nor* auro *with gold.* Quod non opus est *what is not necessary* carum est *is dear* asse *at a penny.*

(a.) Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit* interdum *sometimes* poeticè *in poetry* genitivum *a genitive case:*

ut *as,* Indignus *unworthy* magnorum avorum *of my great ancestors.*

(b.) Fretus *relying upon* interdum *sometimes,* sed *but* raro *seldom,* jungitur *is joined* dativo *to a dative case:* ut *as,* Multitudo hostium *the multitude of the enemy* freta fuit *relied* nulli rei *on nothing* præter quam numero *except their numbers.*

45. Natus, satus, cretus, *born of,* et *and* similia *words of similar meaning* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition;* ortus, editus, *born of, require an ablative case,* vel *either* cum *with* vel *or* sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Nate *o you born* Deâ *of a goddess.* Sate *o man sprung from* sanguine *the blood* Divûm *of the Gods.* Hortamur *we encourage him* fari *to tell* quo sanguine *of what race* cretus *he is sprung.* Generate *o son* Anchisâ *of Anchises,* certissima proles *most undoubted offspring* Deûm *of the Gods.* Venus *Venus* orta mari *born of the sea* præstat mare *makes the sea safe* eunti *for the voyager.* Nympha *I a nymph* edita *born* de magno flumine *of a mighty river* contenta fui *was content* te *with you* marito *for my husband.*

46. Ablativus rei *an ablative case of the thing* ad quam *to which* comparatio *comparison* fiat *is made* subjicitur *is put after* comparativis *adjectives in the comparative degree,* vel *or else* utraque res comparata *each of the things which are compared together* ponitur *is put* in eodem casu *in the same case,* conjunctione quàm *the conjunction* quàm *than* interpositâ *being inserted:* ut *as,* Argentum *silver* est *is* vilius *of less value* auro *than gold,* aurum *gold* virtutibus *than virtue.* Certa pax *certain peace* melior est *is better* tutiorque *and safer* quàm *than* sperata victoria *a victory hoped for.*

(a.) Cùm *when* duo adjectiva *two adjectives* vel *or* adverbia *adverbs* comparantur inter se *are compared together,* et *and* conjunguntur *are connected* per quàm *by quàm,* ambo *both* fere ponuntur *are usually put* in comparativo *in the comparative degree:* ut *as,* Concio *the speech* Publii Æmilii *of Publius Æmilius* fuit verior quàm gratior *was true rather than pleasing* populo *to the people.* Non timeo *I am not afraid* ne *lest* videar *I should seem* evomere hæc *to pour forth these things* in illum *against him* libentius quàm verius *with more eagerness than truth.*

(b.) Post *after* minus *less,* plus, amplius, *more,* et *and* longius *farther,* quàm *than* interdum *sometimes* omittitur *is*

omitted, nihilominus *nevertheless* substantivum *the substantive* quod sequitur *which follows* non ponitur *is not put* in ablativo *in the ablative case:* ut *as,* Si *if* vos *ye* hodie *to-day* feceritis *make* minus *less* decem plebis tribunos *than ten tribunes of the people.* Cùm *when* æger fuisset *he had been sick* plus annum *more than a year.* Dixit *he said* copias *that the troops* Gallorum *of the Gauls* abfuisse *were absent* ab hybernis suis *from his winter quarters* non longius *not further* millia passuum octo *than eight miles.*

(c.) Aliquando *sometimes* quàm pro, cum substantivo *with a substantive,* quàm qui, vel *or* quàm ut, cum verbo *with a verb,* subjiciuntur *are put after* comparativis *adjectives in the comparative degree:* ut *as,* Prœlium *a battle* editur *takes place,* atrocius *more violent* quàm pro numero *than one would expect from the number* pugnantium *of the combatants.* Major sum *I am too great* quàm cui fortuna possit nocere *for fortune to be able to injure me.* Flumen *the river* latius erat *was too wide* quàm ut tranare possent *for them to be able to swim across.*

47. MEI *of me,* tui *of thee or you,* sui *of himself,* nostri *of us,* vestri *of you,* genitivi *the genitive cases* primitivorum *of their primitives,* ponuntur *are used* cùm *when* persona *a person* significatur *is signified:* ut *as,* Languet *she languishes* desiderio tui *for want of you.* Parsque *and part* tui *of you* lateat *may lie* clausa *shut up* corpore meo *in my body.* Imago nostri *the picture of our person.*

48. Meus *mine,* tuus *thine,* suus *his own,* noster *ours,* vester *yours,* ponuntur *are used* cùm *when* actio *action* vel *or* possessio *the possession* rei *of a thing* significatur *is signified:* ut *as,* Favet *he favours* desiderio tuo *your desire.* Imago nostra *our picture,* (id est *that is,* quam *which* nos *we* possidemus *do possess.)*

49. Pronomina possessiva *possessive pronouns* interdum *sometimes* recipiunt *take* post se *after them* hos genitivos *these genitive cases,* ipsius *of himself,* solius *of him alone,* unius *of one,* omnium *of all,* plurium *of more,* paucorum *of few,* cujusque *of every one;* et *and also* genitivos *the genitive cases* participiorum *of participles* qui *which* referuntur *are referred* ad primitivum *to a primitive* subauditum *understood:* ut *as,* Dixi *I affirmed* rempublicam *that the state* esse salvam *was preserved* meâ unius operâ *by my single service.* Meum

solius peccatum *my offence alone* non potest *cannot* corrigi *be amended.* Cùm *whereas* nemo *nobody* legat *reads* scripta mea timentis *the writings of me fearing* recitare *to rehearse them* vulgò *publicly.* Ceperis conjecturam *you may guess* de studio tuo ipsius *by your own study.* Præstantior *more excellent* in suâ cujusque laude *each in his own skill.* Nostrâ omnium memoriâ *in the memory of us all.* Respondet *he answers* vestris paucōrum laudibus *the praises of you few.*

50. Sui *of himself* et *and* suus *his own* sunt *are* reciproca *reciprocals;* id est *that is,* reflectuntur *they have relation* semper *always* ad id *to that* quod *which* præcessit *went before* præcipuum *most to be noted* in sententiâ *in the sentence:* ut *as,* Animus *the mind* sentit *feels* se *that it* moveri *is moved* vi suâ *by its own power* non alienâ *not by that of anything else.* Pater *my father* oravit me *begged me* ut venirem *to come* ad se *to him.*

51. Hæc demonstrativa *these pronouns demonstrative,* hic iste, ille, is, fere *commonly* distinguuntur *are distinguished* sic *thus;* hic, demonstrat *points to* proximum *the nearest* mihi *to me;* iste, eum *him* qui *who* est *is* apud te *by you;* ille, eum *him* qui *who* est *is* remotus *at a distance* ab utroque *from both of us;* is, eum *him* de quo *of whom* mentio fit *mention is being made.*

52. Quum *when* hic et *and* ille referuntur *are referred* ad duo anteposita *to two things or persons going before,* hic, plerumque *generally* refertur *is referred* ad posterius *to the latter,* ille, ad prius *to the former:* ut *as,* Cæsar *Cæsar* habebatur *was accounted* magnus *great* mugnificentiâ *for his liberality,* Cato *Cato* integritate vitæ *for the integrity of his life:* Ille *the former* clarus factus *was illustrious* mansuetudine *for his merciful disposition;* huic *to the latter* severitas vitæ *the strictness of his life* addiderat *had added* dignitatem *dignity.*

(*a.*) Nonnunquam vero *but sometimes* hic et *and* ille habent *have* mutatas vices *their places changed:* ut *as,* Certa pax *certain peace* melior est *is better* tutiorque *and safer* quàm *than* sperata victoria *victory hoped for;* hæc *the one* est *is* in tuâ potestate *in your own power,* illa *the other* in Deorum *in that of the Gods.*

53. Idem *the same* sæpe *often* habet *has* vim copulativam *a copulative force:* ut *as,* Nil *nothing* liberale est *is liberal* quod non idem *which is not also* justum *just.* Operari con-

ferunt *they devote their attention* in res obscuras *to obscure matters,* easdemque *and these too* non necessarias *not necessary.*

54. VERBA substantiva *verbs substantive,* ut *as,* sum *I am,* fio *I am made,* existo *I am;* verba passiva *verbs passive* vocandi *of calling,* ut *as,* nominor *I am named,* appellor *I am called,* dicor *I am said,* vocor *I am called,* et *and* similia *the like* iis *to them,* ut *as,* videor *I am seen,* habeor *I am accounted,* existimor *I am thought,* habent *have* eosdem casus *the same cases* utrinque *on both sides:* ut *as,* Deus *God* est *is* Creator *the Maker* mundi *of the world.* Natura *nature* dedit *hath granted* omnibus *to all* esse *to be* beatis *happy.* Ex nitido *from a smart man* fit *he becomes* rusticus *a clown.* Dicorque *and I am called* opifer *helper* per orbem *all over the world.* Da *grant* mihi *to me* fallere *to deceive,* da *grant to me* videri *to seem* justo *just* sanctoque *and holy.*

(*a.*) Item *likewise* omnia verba *all verbs* ferè *in a manner* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* adjectivum *an adjective,* quod *which* concordat *agrees* cum *with* nominativo verbi *the nominative case of the verb* casu *in case,* genere *gender,* et *and* numero *number:* ut *as,* Pii *pious men* orant *pray* taciti *silently.* Malus pastor *a bad shepherd* dormit *sleeps* supinus *with his face upwards.*

55. SUM *I am* et *and* fio *I become* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case* quoties *as often as* significant *they signify* possessionem *possession,* officium *duty,* signum *sign,* aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertinet *has respect* ad rem quampiam *to anything:* ut *as,* Est *it is the duty* adolescentis *of a young man* revereri *to reverence* majores natu *his elders.* Thebæ *Thebes* factæ sunt *became* populi Romani *the property of the Roman people* jure belli *by the right of war.*

56. Verba *verbs* accusandi *of accusing,* damnandi *of condemning,* absolvendi *of acquitting,* et *and* similia *the like,* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case* criminis *of the accusation* vel *or* pœnæ *of the punishment,* accusativum *an accusative* personæ *of the person:* ut *as,* Accusat *he accuses* alterum *the other* ambitûs *of bribery.* Insimulabant *they accused* eum *him* proditionis *of treason.* Damnatus est *he was condemned* octupli *in eight-fold damages.*

57. Hic genitivus *this genitive case* vertitur *is changed* aliquando *sometimes* in ablativum *into an ablative,* interdum

sometimes (cùm *when* de crimine agitur *the accusation is spoken of)* cum *with* præpositione de *the preposition de :* ut *as,* Si *if* es *you are* iniquus judex *a partial judge* in me *to me,* ego *I* condemnabo *will condemn* te *you* eodem crimine *of the same crime.* Non damnarer *I should not be condemned* capite *to death* ob eam rem *for that matter.* Restituit *he restored* Licinium *Licinius* condemnatum *who had been condemned* de aleâ *for gambling.*

(*a.*) Uterque *both,* nullus *none,* alter *the other,* neuter *neither of the two,* alius *another,* ambo *both,* et *and* adjectiva superlativa *adjectives of the superlative degree,* junguntur *are joined* verbis *to verbs* hujusmodi *of that kind* non nisi *only* in ablativo *in the ablative case :* ut *as,* Accusas *do you accuse him* furti *of theft* an *or* stupri *indecency ?* Utroque *of both.* Accusaris *you are accused* de plurimis *of very many things* simul *at once.*

58. Verba *verbs* miserendi *of pitying* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case,* præter *except* miseror *to pity,* qui *which* jungitur *is joined* soli accusativo *to an accusative case only :* ut *as,* Oro *I pray you* miserere *pity* laborum tantorum *such great distresses,* miserere *pity* animi *a soul* ferentis *suffering* non digna *things undeserved.* O sola miserata *O you who alone have pitied* infandos labores *the unspeakable calamities* Trojæ *of Troy.*

59. Verba *verbs* reminiscendi *of remembering* et *and* oblivisci *of forgetting* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case,* vel *or* accusativum *an accusative :* us *as,* Est *it is* proprium *the property* stultitiæ *of folly* cernere *to discern* aliorum vitia *other men's faults,* oblivisci *to forget* suorum *its own.* Nec memini *nor do I remember* veterum malorum *the old misfortunes* lætorve *nor am I glad of them.* Recordabitur *he will recollect* flagitiorum suorum *his crimes.* Tu *you,* Caius Cæsar *O Caius Cæsar,* soles *are wont* oblivisci *to forget* nihil *nothing* nisi *except* injurias *injuries.* Juvabit *it will be a pleasure* olim *hereafter* meminisse *to call to mind* hæc *these things.* Si *if* recordor *I recollect* ritè *well* audita *the things I heard.*

60. Verba *verbs* admonendi *of admonishing* exigunt *require* genitivum rei *a genitive of the thing,* accusativum personæ *an accusative of the person ;* interdum *sometimes* ablativum rei *an ablative of the thing* cum *with* præpositione de *the preposition de,* interdum *sometimes* geminum accusativum *a double accusative :* ut *as,* Catilina *Catiline* admonebat *reminded* alium

one egestatis *of his need,* alium *another* cupiditatis suæ *of his covetousness.* Putavi *I thought* te *that you* admonendum esse *ought to be admonished* eâ de re *of that matter.* Unoquoque gradu *at every step* commonemur *we are reminded* de avaritiâ tuâ *of your avarice.* Præclarè admones *you do well to admonish* me *me* illud *of that.*

61. Potior *to gain or enjoy* jungitur *is joined* aut *either* genitivo *to a genitive case,* aut *or* ablativo *to an ablative:* ut *as,* Romani *the Romans* potiti sunt *gained* signorum *the standards* et *and* armorum *the arms.* Troës *the Trojans* egressi *being landed* potiuntur *enjoy* optatâ arenâ *the wished-for shore.*

62. OMNIA verba *all verbs* fere *commonly* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* ejus rei *of that thing* cujus causâ *for the sake of which* aliquid *anything* fit *is done,* aut *or* in quam *to which* actio *the action* refertur *is referred:* ut *as,* Sic *so* nullum tempus *no time* abibit vobis *will pass by to you* iners *unproductive.* Magna injuria *a great injury* facta est *was done* Laomedonti *to Laomedon.* Pisistratus *Pisistratus* vicit *conquered* Megarenses *the Megarians* sibi *for himself* non *not* patriæ *for his country.* Hoc *this* patet *is evident* omnibus *to all.* Quid *what* majus *greater thing* nutricula *can a nurse* voveat *pray for* dulci alumno *for her dear boy?* Appius *Appius* blanditur mihi *caresses me.* Civitas Romana *the Roman state* olim *formerly* parum vacabat *had but little leisure* liberalibus studiis *for liberal studies.* Namque *for* est mihi *there is to me* domi *at home* pater *a father,* est *there is* injusta noverca *an unjust step-mother.* Consulite *consult* vobis *for yourselves,* prospicite *provide* patriæ *for your country.* Medici *physicians* timent *dread* noxam *the injurious qualities* vini *of wine* ægris *for invalids.*

(*a.*) Sed *but* delecto *to delight,* juvo *to help,* lædo *to hurt,* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Arbusta *trees* non juvant *do not please* omnes *every one.*

63. Verba *verbs* comparandi *of comparing* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case,* interdum etiam *sometimes also* accusativum *an accusative* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositionibus *with the prepositions* inter vel *or* cum: ut *as,* Sic *thus* solebam *was I used* componere *to compare* magna *great things* parvis *to small.* Comparate *compare* hominem cum homine *man with man,* rem cum re *circumstance with circumstance.* Comparemus *let us compare* partes *the parts* honestatis *of honesty* inter se *with one another.*

64. Verba *verbs* dandi *of giving*, reddendi *of restoring*, et *and* contraria *the contrary*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as*, Fortuna *fortune* dat *gives* nimis *too much* multis *to many*, satis *enough* nulli *to nobody*. Quis casus *what event* ademit te *has taken you away* mihi *from me?* Numeravit *he paid* mihi *to me* æs alienum *the debt.*

65. Verba *verbs* appropinquandi *of approaching*, adjungendi *of joining*, et *and* contraria *the contraries to them*, exigunt *require* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as*, Ingenuus puer *the well-born boy* rudis *being unpractised* nescit *knows not how* hærere *to stick* equo *to a horse.* Miscebat *he used to mingle* mella *honey* forti Falerno *with the strong Falernian wine.* Jungit *he yokes* equos *horses* currui *to the chariot.* Celata virtus *concealed virtue* paulum distat *is but little removed from* sepultæ inertiæ *buried indolence:* eripe te *tear yourself* moræ *from delay.*

(*a.*) Quædam ex his *some of these verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* præpositione ad *the preposition ad* admittunt *admit* accusativum *an accusative case* cum ad *with ad;* et *and* interdum *sometimes* verba *verbs* amovendi *of removing* et *and* distandi *of being distant* admittunt *admit* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition*, vel *or* (apud poetas *in the poets*) sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as*, Hi *these* appropinquant *are near* ad summam aquam *the top of the water.* Fretum *a strait* separat *separates* Sestos Abydenâ urbe *from the city of Abydos.* Mors igitur *death therefore* abducit nos *takes us away* a malis *from misfortunes* non *not* a bonis *from pleasing circumstances.* Narras *you tell us* quantum *how much* Codrus *Codrus* distet *is removed* ab Inacho *from Inachus*

66. Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding*, parendi *of obeying*, resistendi *of resisting*, et *and* dicendi *of telling*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as*, Pecunia *money* collecta *gathered up* imperat *commands* aut *or* servit *serves* cuique *every man.* Dic mihi *tell me* quid feci *what have I done?* Quæ *which things* promitto tibi *I promise you* me esse observaturum *to observe* sanctissime *most religiously.* Tempore *in time* animosus equus *the spirited horse* paret *obeys* lentis habenis *the slow reins.* Repugnavi *I opposed* omnibus ejus dictis *all his speeches.*

(*a.*) Excipe *except* rego *to rule*, guberno *to govern*, jubeo *to order*, quæ *which verbs have* accusativum *an accusative*

case; tempero *to rule,* et *and* moderor *to rule,* quæ *which* admittunt *admit* vel *either* dativum *a dative case,* vel *or* accusativum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Jubebo *I will command* fortem animum *my brave mind* tolerare *to endure* hoc *this.* Ille *he* regit animos *restrains their fierceness* dictis *with his words.* Hortor te *I exhort you* ut gubernes *to manage* omnia *everything* tuâ prudentiâ *according to your own wisdom.* Sit censor *let there be a censor* qui doceat *who may teach* viros *husbands* moderari uxoribus *to manage their wives.* Decet *it is right* moderari consilia *to direct one's counsels* non *not* voluptate *according to pleasure* sed *but* officio *duty.* Æolus *Æolus* temperat *restrains* iras *the violence* ventorum *of the winds.* Vix temperavere *they scarcely restrained* animis *their courage.*

67. Verba *verbs* irascendi *of being angry* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case:* Verba *verbs* condonandi *of pardoning* dativum *a dative* personæ *of the person,* accusativum *an accusative* culpæ *of the fault,* si *if* ambo *both* exprimuntur *are expressed;* si *if* alterum tantùm *one only be expressed,* dativum *a dative:* Verba *verbs* minandi *of threatening* dativum *govern a dative* personæ *of the person,* accusativum *an accusative* rei *of the thing:* ut *as,* Nihil est *there is no reason* quod succenseam *why I should be angry* adolescenti *with the young man.* Homines *men* ignoscunt sibi omnia *forgive themselves for everything.* Minitatus est *he threatened* utrique *each of them* mortem *with death.*

68. Verba *verbs* fidendi *of trusting* et *and* contraria *the contrary* iis *to them* exigunt *require* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Decet *it is fit* committere *to commit* nil *nothing* nisi *but* lene *what is soft* vacuis venis *to the empty veins.* Diffidit *he distrusts* perpetuitati *the continuance* bonorum suorum *of his good fortune.*

(*a.*) Interdum vero *but sometimes* verba fidendi *verbs of trusting* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative:* ut *as,* Confidit *he trusts in* stabilitate *the stability* fortunæ *of fortune.*

69. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum his adverbiis *with these adverbs,* benè *well,* malè *ill,* satis *enough;* et *and* cum his præpositionibus *with these prepositions,* ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re, fermè *for the most part* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case:* ut *as,* Dii *may the Gods* benefaciant *do good* tibi *to thee!* Multitudo *the multitude* circumfundebatur *surrounded on all sides* con-

cionanti *him haranguing.* Judices *the judges* debuerant *ought* constare *to have been consistent* sibi *with themselves,* et *and* convenire *to have agreed* superioribus judiciis *with former decisions.* Campus *a plain* interjacens *lying between* Tiberi *the Tiber* et *and* mœnibus Romanis *the walls of Rome.* Obstiti *I opposed* omnibus ejus consiliis *all his plans.* Ausa est *she has dared* postponere *to postpone* vos *you* natis suis *to her own children.* Præfecit Brutum *he appointed Brutus to command* copiis *the troops.* Proponite ora ipsa *place his very countenance before* oculis *your eyes.* Magnitudine animi *by magnanimity* potest repugnari *one can resist* fortunæ *fortune.* Superfuit *he survived* patri *his father.*

(*a.*) Nonnulla tamen *but some* ex his *of these* interdum *sometimes* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Alius *one* præstat *exceeds* alium *another* ingenio *in ability.* Beatum est *it is a happy thing* post mortem *after death* convenire *to meet* eos *those* qui *who* vixerint *have lived* justè *justly* et *and* cum fide *honourably.*

70. Interdum *sometimes* dativus *a dative case* agentis *of the agent* subjicitur *is put after* passivis verbis *passive verbs;* interdum *sometimes* ablativus *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as,* Hoc *this* non intelligitur *is not understood* viventi *by any one living* in laboribus *in labours.* Laudatur *he is praised* ab his *by the one,* culpatur *he is blamed* ab illis *by the others.*

71. Sum cum multis aliis *the verb sum with many others* admittit *admits* geminum dativum *a double dative case,* alterum *one* personæ *of the person or object,* alterum *the other* rei *of the thing or effect:* ut *as,* Mare *the sea* est *is* exitio *the destruction* avidis nautis *of greedy sailors.* Reliquit *he left* quinque cohortes *five cohorts* præsidio *as a protection* castris *to the camp.* Delegerunt *they chose* hunc locum *this place* domicilio *for a habitation* sibi *for themselves.*

72. VERBA transitiva *verbs transitive* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case:* ut *as,* Cano *I sing of* arma *arms* virumque *and the man.* Non deprecor *I do not deprecate* mortem *death,* inquit *said he.*

73. Verba neutralia *verbs neuter* sæpe *often* habent *have* post se *after them* accusativum *an accusative case* cognatæ significationis *of a like signification:* ut *as,* Servit *he serves* duram servitutem *a hard servitude* Nec *nor* vox *does your*

voice sonat *sound* hominem *like a human creature;* O Dea *O a Goddess,* certè *doubtless.*

(*a.*) Verba neutralia *neuter verbs* aliquando etiam *sometimes also* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative* ejus rei *of that thing* quæ *which* significat *signifies* causam *the cause:* ut *as,* Id succenseo *I am angry about that matter* tibi *with you.*

74. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking,* docendi *of teaching,* celandi *of concealing,* cogendi *of compelling,* sæpe *often* regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *two accusative cases:* ut *as,* Tu modò *do but you* posce *ask* veniam *pardon* Deos *of the Gods.* Consuefeci *I have accustomed* filium *my son* ne celet *not to conceal* ea *these things* me *from me.* Quid *why,* asine *o ass,* nunc te doceam literas *should I now teach you letters?* Quid *to what* non cogis *do you not drive* mortalia pectora *mortal hearts,* sacra fames *o cursed desire* auri *for gold?*

(*a.*) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba docendi *verbs of teaching* per ellipsin *by ellipsis* admittunt *admit* ablativum *an ablative:* ut *as,* Nobilissimus fidicen *a very celebrated lyre-player* docuit Socratem *taught Socrates* fidibus *the lyre,* (i.e. *that is,* ludere fidibus *to play on the lyre.*)

75. Quædam etiam verba *some verbs also* motûs *of motion* composita *compounded* cum præpositionibus *with the prepositions* ad, trans, circum, præter, regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *a double accusative case,* quorum alter *one of which* refertur *is referred* ad præpositionem *to the preposition:* ut *as.* Trajecit copias *he threw his troops across* Iberum *the Ebro.* Idem *he also* adigit Afranium jusjurandum *compels Afranius to take an oath.*

76. Verba *verbs* quæ *which* activâ voce *in the active voice* regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *a double accusative case,* et *and* verba *verbs* vestiendi *of clothing,* habent *have* post se *after them* accusativum *an accusative case* etiam *also* in passivâ voce *in the passive voice:* ut *as,* Posceris *you are required to sacrifice* exta *the entrails* bovis *of a heifer.* Belgæ *the Belgians* transducuntur *are led across* Rhenum *the Rhine.* Induiturque *and he is clothed with* aures *the ears* aselli *of an ass* lentè gradientis *which proceeds slowly.*

77. QUODVIS verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* ablativum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying* instrumentum *the instrument,* aut *or* causam *the cause,* aut *or* modum *the manner* actionis *of an action:* ut *as,* Hi *these* certant *endeavour*

defendere *to defend themselves* jaculis *with darts,* illi *they* saxis *with stones.* Miltiades *Miltiades* constituit *settled* res *the affairs* Chersonesi *of the Chersonese* summâ æquitate *with the greatest equity.* Gloriantur *they boast* suâ victoriâ *of their victory.* Vivunt *they live* lacte *on milk.* Præstitit *he excelled* omnibus *all men* lepōre *in wit.* Oportet nos *it becomes us* dolere *to grieve* delicto *at a fault,* gaudere *to rejoice* correctione *at correction.* Subvexerat frumentum *he had carried corn up* flumine Arari *the river Saone* navibus *in ships.*

78. Cùm *when* nomen agentis *the name of the agent* sequitur *follows* verbum *the verb,* ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition :* ut *as,* Pompeius *Pompey* victus est *was defeated* à Cæsare *by Cæsar.*

79. Ablativus *an ablative* pretii *of the price* plerumque subjicitur *is generally put after* verbis *verbs* emendi *of buying,* vendendi *of selling,* æstimandi *of valuing :* ut *as,* Victoria *the victory* stetit Pœnis *cost the Carthaginians* multo sanguine *much blood.* Isocrates *Isocrates* vendidit *sold* unam orationem *one speech* triginta talentis *for thirty talents.*

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* genitivus *a genitive case* subjicitur *is put after them,* voce pretio *the word pretio* subaudità *being understood :* ut *as,* Nequicquam iis pensi est *it is of no consequence to them* quid faciant *what they do.* Judices *the judges* non flocci faciunt rempublicam *do not value the republic a straw.*

(b.) Tanti *for so much,* quanti *for how much,* pluris *for more,* minoris *for less,* plurimi *for very much,* cum paucis similibus *with a few similar words,* sæpe usurpantur *are often used* post hæc verba *after these verbs :* ut *as,* Eris *you will be* tanti *of so much value* aliis *to others,* quanti *as* fueris *you are* tibi *to yourself.* Alexander *Alexander* plurimi fecerat Hephæstionem *had very greatly valued Hephæstion.*

80. Verba *verbs* abundandi *of abounding,* implendi *of filling,* onerandi *of loading,* et *and* his contraria *their contraries,* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case :* ut *as,* Antipho *Antipho,* abundas *you abound* amore *with love.* Sylla *Sylla* explevit *filled* omnes suos *all his army* divitiis *with riches.* Quibus mendaciis *with what lies* homines levissimi *have the vainest men* onerârunt *loaded* te *you?* Queror *I complain* vela *that your sails* carere reditu *have no return,* verba *your words* fide *no honesty.* Egeo pane *I want bread.*

(a.) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba egendi *verbs of wanting* et *and* implendi *of filling* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case :* ut *as,* Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine,* pinguisque ferinæ *and fat venison.* Indigent *they want* non tam *not so much* artis *skill* quàm *as* laboris *industry.*

81. Verba *verbs* abstinendi *of abstaining from,* atque *and* arcendi *of driving away from* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case :* interdum *sometimes* cum præpositione *with a preposition,* quæ quidem *which indeed* semper usurpatur *is always used* ante personam *before a person :* ut *as,* Lucius Brutus *Lucius Brutus* liberavit *delivered* civitatem *the state* dominatu regio *from the dominion of the kings.* Gaudeo *I am glad* te *that you* liberatum *are recovered* à quartanâ *from your ague.* Apud veteres Romanos *among the ancient Romans* nefas habebatur *it was considered impiety* arcere *to repel* quemcunque mortalium *any mortal* tecto *from one's roof.* Tu Jupiter *do you, o Jupiter,* arcebis *repel* hunc *this man* a tuis aris *from your altars,* a tectis urbis *from the houses of the city.*

(a.) Apud poetas *among the poets* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the Greek usage*) verba abstinendi *verbs of abstaining from* aliquando *sometimes* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case :* ut *as,* Abstineto *abstain,* dixit *said she,* irarum *from anger* calidæque rixæ *and hot strife.* Desine *desist* tandem *at length* mollium querelarum *from effeminate complaints.*

82. Fungor *to discharge,* fruor *to enjoy,* utor *to use,* vescor *to live upon,* dignor *to think one's self worthy,* muto *to change,* et *and* composita *their compounds,* et *and* supersedeo *to pass by,* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case :* ut *as,* Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory,* fungatur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiæ *of justice.* Hannibal *Hannibal* cùm *when* posset uti *he might have reaped advantage* victoriâ *from his victory* maluit *preferred* frui *to reap only pleasure.* Quid *what* puer Ascanius *is become of the boy Ascanius,* superatne *does he survive* et *and* vescitur aurâ *breathe the air of life?* Equidem *truly* haud dignor me *I do not think myself worthy* tali honore *of such honor.* Diruit *he pulls down,* ædificat *he builds,* mutat *he changes* quadrata *square things* rotundis *for round.* Supersedendum est *we must forbear* multitudine *a multitude* verborum *of words.*

83. Pascor *to feed upon* et *and* nitor *to lean upon* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case,* vel *either* sine præpositione *without a preposition,* vel *or* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as,* Pascuntur *they feed* floribus *on flowers* et *and* victu *on the food* simplicis herbæ *of the plain herb.* Livor *envy* pascitur *feeds* in vivis *on the living.* Juvenis *the youth* qui nititur *who leans* purâ hastâ *on a bright spear.* Salus *the safety* civitatis *of the state* nitebatur *depended* in vitâ *on the life* Pompeii *of Pompey.*

84. Ablativus *the ablative case* dicitur *is called* absolutus *absolute* quoties *as often as* substantivum *the substantive* construitur *is construed* in ablativo *in the ablative* cum participio *with a participle,* vel *or* adjectivo *an adjective,* (interdum *sometimes* etiam *even* cum alio substantivo *with another substantive,*) ut denotet *to denote* tempus *the time* vel *or* modum *the manner* vel aliam rem comitantem *or any other accompanying circumstance;* ut *as,* Archilochus *Archilochus* floruit *flourished* Romulo regnante *when Romulus was king.* Nihil *nothing* agi potest *can be done* de hâc re *in this matter* salvis legibus *without violating the laws.* Exposito *it being shown* quid iniquitas loci posset *what great influence the unfavourable nature of the ground had.* Me duce *if I am the leader* tutus eris *you will be safe.*

85. Ablativus *an ablative case* partis *of the part* affectæ *affected,* et *and* poëticè *by the poets* accusativus *an accusative,* additur *is added* verbis quibusdam *to some verbs:* ut *as,* Micat *he quivers* auribus *in his ears* et *and* tremit *trembles* artus *as to his limbs.*

(*a.*) Quædam *some of these verbs* usurpantur *are used* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the usage of the Greeks,* sed *but* rarissimè *very rarely,*) etiam *also* cum genitivo *with a genitive case:* ut *as,* Facis *you act* absurdè *absurdly,* qui *who* angas *tormentest* te *yourself* animi *in mind.*

86. Exsulo *to be banished* admittit *admits* ablativum *an ablative,* veneo *to be sold* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition,* vapulo *to be beaten* ablativum *an ablative* vel *either* sine præpositione *without a preposition* vel *or* cum præpositione *with a preposition:* ut *as,* Utar tamen *but I will use* mente *my mind* quæ *which* sola *alone* non exsulat *is not banished* loco *from its place.* Respondit *he answered* se *that he* malle *preferred* spoliari *to be plundered* à cive *by a citizen,* quàm venire *to being sold* ab hoste *by an enemy.*

Testis *the witness* rogatus est *was asked* an *whether* vapulâsset *he had been beaten* fustibus *with clubs* ab reo *by the prisoner.* Sentiet *he shall feel* se *that he* vapulare *is stricken* sermonibus *by the discourse* omnium *of every one.*

87. VERBA infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* adduntur *are put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs,* et *and* participiis *participles,* et *and* adjectivis *adjectives:* ut *as,* Amor *love* jussit *commanded me* scribere *to write* quæ *what things* puduit *I was ashamed* dicere *to speak.* Jussus *being ordered* confundere fœdus *to violate the treaty.* Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amari *to be loved.*

88. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking,* hortandi *of exhorting,* imperandi *of commanding,* et *and* contraria *the contrary,* raro *seldom* (nisi *except* apud poetas *in the poets*) habent *have* infinitivum *an infinitive* post se *after them,* plerumque vero *but usually* conjunctionem *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with the subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Oro et hortor te illud *this I beg and exhort you,* ut sis *to be* diligentissimus *most diligent* in munere tuo *in your office.* Moneo *I warn* obtestorque *and entreat you,* ne hos negligas *not to neglect these people* qui *who* propinqui tibi sunt genere *are near to you in family.* Themistocles *Themistocles* persuasit populo *persuaded the people* ut classis *that a fleet* ædificaretur *should be built.*

(*a.*) Ex his vero *but of these verbs* jubeo *to command* et *and* veto *to forbid* etiam in pedestri sermone *even in prose* sæpius junguntur *are more frequently joined* infinitivo *to an infinitive:* ut *as,* Hannibal *Hannibal* jussit *ordered* Tarentinos *the Tarentines* convocari *to be summoned* sine armis *without arms.*

89. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive mood* semper sequitur *always follows* verba efficiendi *verbs of causing:* ut *as,* Tu *do you* facito ut sciam *take care that I know* quicquid indagâris *whatever you find out* de republicâ *about the republic.*

90. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive* plerumque sequitur *always follows* verba accidendi *verbs of happening* et *and* similia *the like:* ut *as,* Persæpe evenit *it very often happens* ut *that* utilitas *expediency* certet *is at variance* cum honestate *with honesty.* Quoniam *since* satisfeci *I have satisfied* amicis *my friends,* reliquum est *it remains* ut egomet mihi consulam *for me to take care of myself.*

(*a.*) Sed *but* infinitivus *an infinitive* sæpe sequitur *often follows* contingit: ut *as,* Non contingit *it does not happen* cuivis homini *to every man* adire Corinthum *to go to Corinth.*

91. Verba *verbs* permittendi *of permitting,* optandi *of wishing,* cogendi *of compelling,* admittunt *admit* vel *either* infinitivum *an infinitive,* vel *or* ut, cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive;* ut *as,* Phaethon *Phaethon* optavit *wished* ut tolleretur *to be taken up* in currum *into the chariot* patris *of his father.* Natura *nature* non patitur *does not permit* ut augeamus *us to increase* nostras opes *our riches* spoliis *by the spoils* aliorum *of others.* Permittes *you will permit* ipsis numinibus *the Gods themselves* expendere *to consider* quid *what* conveniat *is good for* nobis *us.*

92. Oportet *it behoves* et *and* necesse est *it is necessary* habent post se *have after them* interdum *sometimes* infinitivum *an infinitive mood,* sæpius *more frequently* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Oportet valeat possessor *the owner should be in good health.* Tanquam *as if* non solum oporteret *it were not only right* sed etiam *but even* necesse esset *necessary* ita fieri *that it should be done so.* Necesse est *it is inevitable* corpus mortale *that a mortal body* intereat *should perish.*

93. Post verba orandi *after verbs of entreating,* imperandi *of commanding,* vel *or* volendi *of wishing,* ut sæpe omittitur *ut is often omitted,* verbum tamen *nevertheless the verb* ponitur *is put* in subjunctivo *in the subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Rogo atque oro te *I beg and entreat you* pro amore nostro *by my regard for you* colligas te *to recollect yourself* virumque præbeas *and show yourself a man.* Postero die *the next day* rex *the king* edixit *ordered* omnes *all the men* coirent *to assemble* armati *armed.* Vellem *I wish* Di immortales *the immortal Gods* fecissent *had granted* ut ageremus gratias *that we should return thanks* Ser. Sulpicio *to Servius Sulpicius* vivo *while alive.* Malo *I had rather* sapiens hostis *that a wise enemy* metuat te *should fear you* quàm *than* stulti cives *foolish citizens* laudent *praise you.*

(*a.*) Sic *so* post *after* cave *beware* ne sæpe omittitur *ne is often omitted:* ut *as,* Cave existimes *do not believe* me *that I* abjecisse curam *have abandoned all regard* reipublicæ *for the republic.*

94. Verba infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* interdum *sometimes* ponuntur *are put* sola *alone* per ellipsin *by the*

figure ellipsis: ut *as,* Hinc *upon this* spargere in vulgum [*he began*] *to scatter abroad* voces ambiguas *doubtful sayings,* et *and* conscius *knowing himself guilty* quærere *to seek* arma *means to destroy me.* (Incipiebat *he began,* subauditur hîc *is here understood.*)

95. GERUNDIA in di *gerunds in di* habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* cum *with* genitivis *genitive cases,* et *and* pendent *depend* à substantivis *on substantives,* vel *or* ab adjectivis *on adjectives,* nunquam *never* à verbis *on verbs:* ut *as,* Innatus amor *a natural desire* habendi *of getting honey* urget *excites* Cecropias apes *the Attic bees.* Æneas, celsâ in puppi *in his tall ship* jam certus *already determined* eundi *to go.*

96. Gerundia in do *gerunds in do* habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* cum *with* dativis *datives* et *and* ablativis *ablatives:* ut *as,* Illud *that* commune est *is common* ediscendo *to learning* scribendoque *and writing.* Vitium *the disease* alitur *is nourished* vivitque *and lives* tegendo *by being concealed.*

(*a.*) Præpositio *the preposition* sine *without* nunquam usurpatur *is never used* cum gerundiis in do *with gerunds in do.*

97. Gerundia in dum *gerunds in dum* habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* cum accusativis *with accusatives,* sed *but* semper exigunt *always require* præpositionem *a preposition* præcedentem *preceding them:* ut *as,* Locus *a place* amplissimus *very honourable* ad agendum *to plead in.* Mores puerorum *the characters of boys* detegunt se simplicius *discover themselves with more plainness* inter ludendum *whilst they are playing.*

98. Si *if* verbum *the verb* regit *governs* accusativum *an accusative,* gerundivum *the gerundive* sæpius usurpatur *is oftener used* quàm *than* gerundium *the gerund:* ut *as,* Timotheus *Timotheus* peritus fuit *was skilful* civitatis regendæ *in governing a state.* Duci *to be persuaded* præmio *by a bribe* ad accusandos homines *to accuse men,* est *is* proximum *next akin* latrocinio *to robbery.*

(*a.*) Utor *to use,* fruor *to enjoy,* fungor *to discharge,* potior *to gain,* usurpantur *are used* eodem modo *in the same manner:* ut *as,* Olim *formerly* bene morati *men of good character* videntur *appear* reges constituti *to have been*

appointed kings causâ *for the sake* fruendæ justitiæ *of enjoying justice.* Tradiderat ei *he had given him* omnia bona *all his property* utenda *to be made use of.*

99. Gerundivum *the gerundive* in nominativo *in the nominative case* (et *and* in accusativo *in the accusative,* cùm *when* verbum *a verb* infinitivi modi *of the infinitive mood* adjungitur *is added* vel *or* subauditur *understood)* indicat *indicates* necessitatem *necessity,* vel *or* officium *propriety,* vel *or* possibilitatem *possibility :* ut *as,* Orandum est *one must pray* ut sit mens sana *to have a sound mind* in corpore sano *in a sound body.* Diligentia *industry* est *is* præcipuè *especially* colenda *to be cultivated* nobis *by us,* et *and* semper adhibenda *always to be employed.* Putabat *he thought* eos *them* observandos *to be attended to* et colendos *and respected* à se *by him.*

100. SUPINUM in um *the supine in um* habet *has* activam significationem *an active signification,* et *and* sequitur *follows* verbum *a verb* significans *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place :* ut *as,* Veniunt *they come* spectatum *to see,* veniunt *they come* ut *that* ipsæ *they themselves* spectentur *may be seen.*

101. Supinum in u *the supine in u* habet *has* passivam significationem *a passive signification,* et *and* sequitur *follows* adjectiva *adjectives :* ut *as,* Quod *that which* est *is* fœdum *foul* factu *to be done,* idem *the same* est *is* et *also* turpe *shameful* dictu *to be spoken.*

102. VERBA *verbs* quæ *which* non habent *have not* nominativum *a nominative case,* neque inflectuntur *and are not declined* ultra *beyond* tertiam personam singularem *the third person singular* et *and* infinitivum *the infinitive,* dicuntur *are called* impersonalia *verbs impersonal :* ut *as,* Hinc *on one side* tonat *it thunders,* hinc *on the other* æther *the sky* abrumpitur *is rent asunder* missis ignibus *by lightnings darted down.*

103. Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals,* interest *it concerns,* et *and* refert *it concerns,* junguntur *are joined* quibuslibet genitivis *to any genitive cases,* et *and* his ablativis *to these ablative cases,* meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ: ut *as,* Interest *it concerns* magistratûs *the magistrate* tueri *to defend* bonos *the good.* Tuâ refert *it concerns you* nôsse *to know* teipsum *yourself.*

(a.) Et *also* hi genitivi *these genitive cases* adduntur *are*

added, tanti *so much,* quanti *how much,* magni *much,* parvi *little,* pluris *more,* minoris *less,* et *and* similia *similar words:* ut *as,* Tanti refert *of such concern it is* agere *to do* honesta *honest things.*

104. Verba impersonalia *impersonal verbs* regunt *govern* casus *cases* pro sensu *according to their meaning,* more aliorum verborum *like other verbs:* ut *as,* Minimè decet *it does not at all become* oratorem *an orator* irasci *to be angry.* Licuit Themistocli *it was in the power of Themistocles* esse *to be* etioso *indolent.*

105. Præpositio ad *the preposition ad* propriè additur *is peculiarly added* his verbis *to these verbs,* attinet *it belongs,* pertinet *it pertains,* spectat *it concerns:* ut *as,* Vis *would you have* me *me* dicere *to speak* quod *what* attinet *belongs* ad te *to you?*

106. Decet *it becomes,* attinet, et *and* spectat *it concerns,* quamvis *although* dicuntur *they are called* impersonalia *impersonals* sæpe *often* habent *have* nominativum *a nominative case,* et *and* sæpe inveniuntur *are often found* in tertiâ personâ plurali *in the third person plural:* ut *as,* Candida pax *fair peace* decet *becomes* homines *men,* trux ira *savage passion* feras *wild beasts.* Quæ *things which* nihil attinent *are nothing to the purpose.* Ea *these things* non spectant *have no reference* ad religionem *to religion.*

107. Accusativus *an accusative case* personæ *of the person,* cum genitivo *with a genitive* rei *of the thing,* subjicitur *is put after* his impersonalibus *these verbs impersonal,* pœnitet *it repents,* tædet *it wearies,* miseret *it pities,* pudet *it shames,* piget *it grieves:* ut *as,* Malo me pœniteat *I had rather repent* fortunæ *of my fortune* quam *than* pudeat *be ashamed* victoriæ *of my victory.* Non solum me piget *I am not only sorry* stultitiæ meæ *for my folly,* sed etiam *but even* pudet *I am ashamed of it.* Miseret nos *we pity* eorum *them.* Si *if* non pertæsum fuisset *I were not weary* thalami tædæque *of the marriage bed and the marriage torch.*

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* res *the thing* exprimitur *is expressed* vel *either* verbo infinitivi modi *by a verb in the infinitive mood,* vel *or* conjunctione *with the conjunction* quòd *because* et verbo *and a verb:* ut *as,* Non me pudet *I am not ashamed* fateri *to confess* nescire *that I am ignorant* quòd nesciam *of what I am ignorant.* Pœnitet me *I repent* quòd te offendi *of having offended you.*

108. Pleraque passiva verba *most passive verbs* verti possunt *can be turned* in impersonalia *into impersonals* in tertiâ personâ singulari *in the third person singular*, et *and* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* dativum *a dative* agentis *of the agent*, vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition* (qui vero *which however* sæpius subauditur *is usually understood*;) eum vero casum *but that case* objecti *of the object* quem *which* verbum activum *the active verb* regit *governs*: ut *as*, Quo ruitis *whither are you rushing*, generosa domus *o noble family?* male creditur *it is folly to trust* hosti *an enemy*. Migratur *one migrates* morte *through death* in alium quendam locum *to some other place* ex his locis *from these places*.

109. QUÆ *nouns which* significant *signify* partem temporis *a part of time* ponuntur *are put* in ablativo *in the ablative case*: ut *as*, Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours*.

110. Quæ *nouns which* significant *signify* durationem *the duration* temporis *of time*, ponuntur *are put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*: ut *as*, Hìc *here* jam *from this time* regnabitur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* cùm *when* ætas hominis *the age of a man* significatur *is signified*, genitivus *the genitive* usurpatur *is used*: ut *as*, Hamilcar *Hamilcar* duxit secum *took with him* in Hispaniam *into Spain* filium Hannibalem *his son Hannibal* annorum novem *a boy of nine years old*.

(b.) Interdum *sometimes*, sed *but* perraro *very seldom*, duratio temporis *duration of time* significatur *is signified* per ablativum *by the ablative*: ut *as*, Panætius *Panætius* vixit *lived* triginta annis *thirty years* postequam *after* ediderat *he had published* libros *his books* de officiis *about duties*.

111. SPATIUM *the space* loci *of a place* ponitur *is put* in accusativo *in the accusative case* cùm *when* motus *motion to a place* significatur *is signified*; in ablativo *in the ablative*, cùm *when* statio *rest in a place*: ut *as*, Jam *now* processeram *I had advanced* mille passus *a mile*. Consedit *he encamped* millibus passuum sex *six miles* à Cæsaris castris *from Cæsar's camp*.

(a.) Interdum vero *but sometimes* accusativus *the accusative* usurpatur *is used* etiam *even* cùm *when* statio *rest* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Locat castra *he pitches his camp* mille ferè

et quingentos passus *about a mile and a half* ab urbe *from the city.* Dicimus etiam *we say also,* Abest *he is distant* bidui *two days' journey:* ubi *where* itinere, vel *or* iter, subauditur *is understood.*

112. OMNE verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitivum *a genitive case* nominis *of the name* oppidi *of a city or town* in quo *in which* actio fit *any thing is done;* modò *so that* sit *it be* primæ *of the first* vel *or* secundæ declinationis *the second declension,* et *and* singularis numeri *of the singular number:* ut *as,* Quid faciam *what shall I do* Romæ *at Rome?*

(a.) Hi genitivi *these genitive cases,* domi *at home,* humi *upon the ground,* militiæ *in war,* belli *in war,* sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* nominum propriorum *of proper names:* ut *as,* Præterea *besides* augeant rempublicam *let them strengthen the republic* quibuscunque rebus *in whatever matters* poterunt *they can* vel *either* belli *in war* vel *or* domi *at home.* Bos *the ox* procumbit *lies dead* humi *on the ground.* Fuimus *we were* semper *always* unà *together* militiæ *in war* et *and* domi *at home.*

113. Verùm *but* si *if* nomen *the name* oppidi *of a city or town* fuerit *shall be* pluralis numeri *of the plural number,* aut *or* tertiæ declinationis *of the third declension,* ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative case:* ut *as,* Colchus *a Colchian,* an *or* Assyrius *an Assyrian,* nutritus *brought up* Thebis *at Thebes,* an *or* Argis *at Argos.* Ventosus *being inconstant,* Romæ *at Rome* amo *I love* Tibur *Tibur,* Tibure *at Tibur* Romam *I love Rome.*

114. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel *or* insulæ *of an island* additur *is put after* verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* in accusativo *in the accusative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Atque *and* aliquis *some one* inquit *will say,* Jam nunc *now then* eat *let him go* doctas Athenas *to the learned Athens.*

(a.) Domus *a house* et *and* rus *the country* sequuntur *follow* hanc constructionem *this construction:* ut *as,* Capellæ *ye she-goats,* saturæ *being full,* ite domum *go home,* Hesperus *the evening* venit *approaches,* ite *be gone.* Ego *I* rus ibo *will go into the country.*

115. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel *or* insulæ *of an island* additur *is put after* verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* à loco *from a place* in ablativo *in the ablative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Nisi

profectus esses *if you had not gone* Româ *from Rome* antè *before,* relinqueres *you would leave* eam *it* nunc *now.*

(*a.*) Perraro *very seldom* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* præpositiones *prepositions* inveniuntur *are found* ante nomina *before the names* urbium *of cities:* ut *as,* Adolescentulus *while a youth* miles profectus sum *I went as a soldier* ad Capuam *to Capua.* Segesta *Segesta* condita est *was built* ab Æneâ *by Æneas* fugiente *when flying* à Trojâ *from Troy.*

(*b.*) Interdum etiam *sometimes even* regionum nomina *the names of countries* ponuntur *are put* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* in accusativo *in the accusative* vel *or* ablativo *in the ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense* sine præpositione *without a preposition:* ut *as,* Germanicus *Germanicus* proficiscitur *sets out* Ægyptum *for Egypt.* Dein *then* Piso *Piso* statuit *determined* abire *to depart* Syriâ *from Syria.*

(*c.*) Apud poetas *in the poets* quodvis substantivum *any substantive* quod *which* sequitur *follows* verbum motûs *a verb of motion* ad locum *to a place,* interdum ponitur *is sometimes put* in accusativo *in the accusative case:* ut *as,* Dido *Dido* et *and* dux Trojanus *the Trojan leader* deveniunt *come to* eandem speluncam *the same cave.* Refers *you utter* verba *words* non pervenientia *which do not reach* nostras aures *my ears.*

116. ADVERBIA *adverbs* loci *of place,* ubi *where,* ubique *everywhere,* ubicunque *everywhere,* usquam *anywhere,* nusquam *nowhere,* huc *hither,* eo *thither,* quo *whither,* et cætera *and the rest,* interdum *sometimes* habent post se *have after them* genitivos *the genitive cases* terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum, et *and* cùm *when* significant *they signify* gradum *degree,* alios genitivos *other genitives:* ut *as,* Ubicunque terrarum et gentium *in whatever country and nation* jus civium Romanorum *the rights of Roman citizens* violatum est *have been violated,* pertinet ad *it concerns* communem causam *the common cause* libertatis *of liberty.* Videmini *you seem* nescire *to be ignorant* quo amentiæ *to what a pitch of folly* progressi sitis *you have gone.* Venturus eram *I was about to come* eo miseriarum *to that degree of misery.*

(*a.*) Sic *so* post *after* tum, tunc, *then,* genitivus temporis *the genitive temporis* aliquando occurrit *sometimes occurs,* sed *but* non *not* apud optimos auctores *among the best authors:* ut *as,* Poteram *I could do* nihil *nothing* ampliùs *more* tunc temporis *at that time* quàm *than* flere *weep.*

117. Pridie *the day before* et *and* postridie *the day after* admittunt *admit* genitivum diei *the genitive diei* post se *after them*, et *and* accusativum *an accusative* partium *of the parts* mensis *of a month*, vel *or* nominum *of the names* festorum *of festivals:* ut *as*, Pridie ejus diei *the day before that day* venit *he came* in Senatum *into the Senate.* Pridie calendas *the day before the calends* abiit *he departed.*

118. Adverbia quantitatis *adverbs of quantity* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case:* ut *as*, Satis eloquentiæ *eloquence enough*, sapientiæ parùm *little wisdom.*

119. Quædam adverbia *some adverbs* admittunt *admit* eosdem casus *the same cases* qui *as* exiguntur *are required* à vocibus *by the words* à quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived:* ut *as*, Sulpicius Gallus *Sulpicius Gallus* studuit Græcis literis *studied Greek literature* maximè *most* omnium nobilium *of all the nobles.* Exercitum habuit *he kept his army* quàm proximè *as near as possible* hostem *to the enemy.*

120. Ergo *for the sake of* habet *has* genitivum *a genitive case* post se *after it:* ut *as*, Donari *to be rewarded* ergo *for the sake of* virtutis *virtue* benevolentiæque *and kindness.*

121. Procul *far from* interdum *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative case:* ut *as*, Multi *many men* gessere *have managed* suam rem *their own affairs* et publicam *and those of the state* benè *well* procul *far* patriâ *from their country.*

(*a.*) Apud poetas *in the poets* et *and* scriptores *prose writers* serioris ævi *of a later age* clam *without the knowledge of*, palam *in the presence of*, et *and* simul *together with*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case;* et *and* aliquando *sometimes* usque *as far as* cum accusativo *with an accusative* vel *or* ablativo *an ablative:* ut *as*, Clam *without the knowledge of* uxore meâ *my wife* et *and* filio *my son.* Simul his *together with these* dicere possum *I may mention* te *you*, candide Furni *o excellent Furnius.* Velabant *they covered* corpora *their bodies* usque pedes *as far as their feet* carbaso *with linen.*

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative* et *and* disjunctivæ *disjunctive* conjungunt *couple* similes casus *the like cases*, modos *moods*, et *and* tempora *tenses:* ut *as*, Socrates *Socrates* docuit *taught* Xenophontem *Xenophon* et *and* Platonem *Plato.* Nec scribit *he neither writes* nec legit *nor reads.* Occidit *he has died* flebilior *more to be wept* nulli *by no one* quàm *than* tibi *by you*, Virgili *o Virgil.*

(a.) Nisi *unless* ratio *the reason* variæ constructionis *of a different construction* poscat *requires it should be* aliud *otherwise:* ut *as,* Emi *I bought* librum *a book* centussi *for a hundred pence* et *and* pluris *more.* Vixi *I lived* Romæ *at Rome* et *and* Venetiis *at Venice.*

123. Poetæ *the poets* interdum *sometimes* usurpant *use* atque, pro *for* quàm *than* post comparativum *after a comparative:* ut *as,* Arctius atquè *closer than* procera ilex *the lofty ilex* astringitur *is bound* hederæ *to the ivy.*

124. Cùm *when* comparatio *comparison* significatur *is signified;* tam *so, or as,* sæpè *often* usurpatur *is used,* quàm *as* respondente *answering to it:* ut *as,* Vellem *I wish* tam possem *I were as well able* ferre *to bear* domestica *my domestic griefs* quàm *as* contemnere *to despise* ista *those.*

125. Cùm *when* significatur *it is signified* aliquid *that anything* maximum esse *is the greatest* quod fieri potest *which can be,* sæpe *often* superlativus *the superlative* usurpatur *is used,* quàm præcedente *preceded by quam,* interdum *sometimes by* quàm possum: ut *as,* Nihil fuit *nothing was* optabilius *more desirable* mihi *to me* quàm ut cognoscerer *than to be known* esse *to be* quàm gratissimus *as grateful as possible* erga te *towards you.* Cæsar *Cæsar* contendit ad hostem *proceeded towards the enemy* quàm maximis potuit itineribus *by as rapid marches as possible.*

(a.) Pro quàm *for quam* ante superlativum maximus *before the superlative maximus,* quantus *as great as* aliquando usurpatur *is sometimes used:* ut *as,* Hannibal *Hannibal* efficit *causes* quantam maximam vastitatem potest *as great devastation as he can* cædibus *by slaughter* incendiisque *and fires.*

126. Donec, quoad, *until, as long as,* et *and* dum *while, as long as, until,* cùm *when* refertur ad tempus *it has reference to time* plerumque *usually* exigunt *require* indicativum modum *an indicative mood,* rarius *more seldom* subjunctivum *a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Dum *while* regna *the kingdom* Priami *of Priam* manebant *lasted.* Milo *Milo* fuit in Senatu *was in the Senate* eo die *on that day* quoad *until* Senatus *the Senate* dimissus est *was adjourned.* Donec *until* Marcellus *Marcellus* rediit *returned,* silentium fuit *there was silence.* Haud desinam *I will not cease* donec *until* perfecero *I have finished.* Dum *until* tertia æstas *the third summer* viderit *shall have seen him* regnantem *reigning.* Fortâsse *perhaps* expectas *you are waiting* dum *until* hæc dicat *he says this.*

127. Dummodo *as long as (not of time)* et *and* dum, vel *or* modo, usurpata *when used* pro *for* dummodo, junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo soli *to a subjunctive mood only:* ut *as,* Omnia postposui *I thought everything of little consequence* dummodo *as long as* parerem *I could obey* præceptis *the precepts* patris *of my father.* Oderint *let them hate me* dum *provided that* metuant *they fear me.* Manent ingenia *their faculties remain* senibus *to old men* modo *provided* studium *study* et industria *and industry* permaneat *remain.*

128. Quum *since, as,* significans *signifying* causam *the cause* vel *or* denotans *denoting* connectionem aliquam *any connection* duarum sententiarum *between two sentences* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood;* si *if* usurpetur *it be used* pro *for* quòd *because,* indicativo *to an indicative:* ut *as,* Druentia *the Durance,* quum *although* vehat *it comes down* vim aquæ ingentem *a great body of water,* non tamen patiens est *will not however bear* navium *vessels.* Quum *since* vita *life* sine amicis *without friends* plena sit *is full* insidiarum *of treachery* et metûs *and fear,* ratio ipsa *reason itself* monet *warns us* comparare *to form* amicitias *friendships.* Præclarè facis *you do well* quum tenes *in preserving* memoriam *the recollection* Luculli *of Lucullus.*

129. Quum *as,* sequente tum *when followed by* tum *so,* jungitur *is joined* interdum *sometimes* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood,* sæpius *more frequently* indicativo *to an indicative:* ut *as,* Quum multæ res *as many things* in philosophiâ *in philosophy* nequicquam satis explicatæ sint *have been by no means sufficiently explained,* tum *so also* quæstio *the question* de naturâ Deorum *about the nature of the Gods* perdifficilis est *is very difficult.* Quum cupio *I both desire* consequi *to acquire* ipsam cognitionem *the knowledge* juris augurii *of the laws of soothsaying,* tum mehercule *and in truth* incredibiliter delector *I am incredibly delighted* tuis studiis *with your studies.*

130. Quum *when,* tempus significans *meaning time,* jungitur *is joined* interdum *sometimes* indicativo *to the indicative,* interdum *sometimes* subjunctivo *to the subjunctive:* ut *as,* Qui *he who* non propulsat *does not repel* injuriam *injury* a suis *from his friends,* quum potest *when he can,* injuste facit *acts unjustly.* Quinque nobiles juvenes *five noble youths* venerunt *came* ad Hannibalem *to Hannibal* quum esset *when he was* ad lacum Averni *at lake Avernus.* Erit illud profectò tempus *the time indeed will come* quum *when* desideres *you will long for* fidem *the attachment* gravissimi hominis *of a most worthy man.*

131. Antequam et *and* priusquam *before that* junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood* si *if* res *the matter* est *is* in dubio *in doubt*, vel *or* si *if* duæ res *the two matters* de quibus agitur *which are spoken of* connectuntur *are connected;* aliter *otherwise* admittunt *they admit* indicativum *an indicative:* ut *as*, Tempestas *a tempest* minatur *threatens* antequam surgat *before it rises*. Omnia *all things* veneunt *are sold* antequam *before* una gleba *one clod of earth* ematur *is bought*. Quàm benè *how happily* vivebant *men lived* Saturno rege *when Saturn was king*, priusquam *before* tellus *the earth* patefacta est *was levelled* in longas vias *into long roads*.

132. Quin et *and* quominus *but that* sequentia *following* negationem *a negation* vel *or* dubitationem *a doubt*, vel simile aliquid *or any similar expression*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as*, Non dubitat *he does not doubt* quin *but that* Troja *Troy* peritura sit *will perish* brevi *in a short time*. Parmenio *Parmenio* voluit *wished* deterrere *to deter* Philippum *Philip* quominus biberet *from drinking* medicamentum *the medicine*. Solitudines *solitude* non protegebant *did not protect* Tiberium *Tiberius* quin fateretur *from confessing* tormenta *the torments* pectoris *of his breast*.

133. Conjunctiones finales *the final conjunctions* ut *that*, quo *so that*, ne *that not*, et *and* aliæ *others* derivatæ *derived* ab his *from them*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as*, Pylades *Pylades* dixit *said* se *that he* Oresten esse *was Orestes*, ut necaretur *that he might be put to death* pro illo *for him*. Oportet *it is desirable* legem *that a law* brevem esse *should be short* quo *in order that* facilius teneatur *it may be more easily comprehended* ab imperitis *by the ignorant*. Vereor *I fear* ne augeam *lest I may be increasing* tuum laborem *your trouble*.

134. Ut, cùm *when* significat *it signifies* tempus *time* vel *or* comparationem *a comparison*, habet *has* indicativum *an indicative mood* post se *after it:* ut *as*, Ut *since* sumus *we have been* in Ponto *in Pontus*, Ister *the Danube* ter constitit *has thrice been stopped* frigore *by cold*. Ut *as* columbæ *doves*, timidissima turba *a most timid band*, fugiunt *fly from* aquilam *an eagle*.

(a.) Ut, pro *for* ubi *where*, (rarus est usus *it is a rare usage*) jungitur *is joined* indicativo *to an indicative:* ut *as*, Ut *where* littus *the shore* tunditur *is beaten* longè resonante Eoâ undâ *by the far-sounding Eastern wave*.

135. Ut, pro *for* quamvis *although*, jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood:* ut *as*, Ut *although* fueris *you were* dignior *the more worthy*, competitor *your competitor* non est in culpâ *is not in fault.*

136. Utinam *I wish that* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as*, Utinam *I wish that* tu quoque *you also* mutabilis esses *were changeable* cum ventis *as well as the winds.* Utinam *I wish* ne verè scriberem illud *I did not write that with truth.*

137. Licet *although* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood;* quamvis *although* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* indicativo *to an indicative*, nisi *except* apud poetas *among the poets;* quanquam *although* indicativo *to an indicative* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive;* etsi *although* vel *either* indicativo *to an indicative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive:* ut *as*, Improbitas *dishonesty* licet *although* molesta sit *it be troublesome* adversario *to one's adversary* invisa est *is hateful* judici *to the judge.* Id quod turpe est *that which is base*, quamvis *although* occultetur *it may be concealed*, tamen nullo modo potest fieri *can by no means be rendered* honestum *honourable.* Romani *the Romans*, quanquam *although* fessi erant *they were weary* prœlio *of fighting*, tamen *yet* procedunt *advance.* Viri boni *good men* faciunt *do* multa *many things* ob eam causam quod decet *because it is right*, etsi *although* vident *they see* nullum emolumentum *no advantage* consecuturum *likely to ensue.*

138. Si *if* et *and* nisi *unless*, cùm *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* de quâ agitur *of which one is speaking* vel existere *either exists*, vel posse existere *or may exist*, junguntur *are joined* indicativo modo *to the indicative mood*, vel *or* præsenti *to the present* vel perfecto *or perfect tense* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive;* cùm *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* non existere *does not exist*, exigunt *they require* imperfectum *the imperfect* vel *or* plusquamperfectum *the plusquam-perfect* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive:* ut *as*, Debebas colere *you ought to respect* hunc *this man* patris loco *as you would your father*, si *if* esset *there were* ulla pietas *any piety* in te *in you.* Si *if* unquam *ever* visus sum *I have appeared* tibi *to you* fortis *brave*, certe *certainly* me admiratus esses *you would have admired me* in illâ causâ *in that cause.* Tu cave *do you beware*, nisi *unless* debes ludibrium *you are bent on becoming the sport* ventis *of the winds.* Multa *many*

things dehortantur me *tend to divert me* à vobis *from you,* nî *unless* studium *my affection* reipublicæ *for the republic* superet *overpowered them.*

139. Quasi, tanquam, *as if,* et similia *and similar words,* exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Quid *why* ego utor *do I use* his testibus *these witnesses* quasi *as if* res *the matter* incerta esset *were uncertain* ac *and* dubia *doubtful.* Cogitandum est *we ought to regulate our thoughts* sic *so* tanquam *as if* aliquis *any one* possit inspicere *were able to look* in intimum pectus *into our inmost hearts.*

140. Quòd, quia, *because,* quoniam *since,* junguntur *are joined* indicativo *to an indicative mood* cùm *when* indicant *they indicate* opinionem *the opinion* loquentis *of the speaker;* cùm *when* aliorum *that of others,* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive:* ut *as,* Refugit te *he flies from you* quia *because* rugæ *wrinkles* et *and* capitis nives *snowy hair* turpant *disfigure you.* Panætius *Panætius* laudat *praises* Africanum *Africanus* quòd *because* abstinens fuerit *he was temperate.*

141. Utrum, ne, an, num, cùm *when* significant *they signify* dubitationem *a doubt* vel *or* obliquam interrogationem *an indirect question,* postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood,* etiamsi *even if* conjunctio ipsa *the conjunction itself* subaudiatur *be understood:* ut *as,* Difficile dictu est *it is difficult to say* utrum *whether* hostes *the enemy* pugnantes *while fighting* timuerint *feared* virtutem *the valour* Pompeii *of Pompey* magis *more,* an *or* victi *when conquered* dilexerint *loved* mansuetudinem *his clemency.* Legati *the ambassadors* jussi sunt *were ordered* speculari *to see* num *whether* animi *the dispositions* sociorum *of the allies* sollicitati essent *had been tampered with* a rege Perseo *by king Perseus.* Nihil interest *it does not signify* doleam *whether I grieve* necne doleam *or do not grieve.*

142. Ne, cùm *when* prohibet *it forbids,* jungitur *is joined* imperativo *to an imperative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Ne temne *do not despise us* quòd *because* ultro *of our own accord* præferimus *we bring* vittas *fillets* manibus *in our hands.* Tu ne quæsieris *do not you enquire* quem finem *what end* Dî *the Gods* dederint *have assigned* mihi *to me,* quem tibi *or to you.*

143. Omnes voces *all words* quæ *which* exprimunt *express* meram interrogationem *a mere question* junguntur *are joined*

indicativo *to an indicative mood:* ut *as,* Tune *did you* veritus es *fear* id *that?* Num piget eum *is he sorry* facti *for his deed?* Quis fuit *who was he* qui primus *who first* protulit *produced* horrendos enses *horrible swords?*

144. QUI *who* significans *signifying* causam *the cause* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Clusini *the Clusians* misere *sent* legatos *ambassadors* Romam *to Rome* qui peterent *to beg for* auxilium *aid* a Senatu *from the Senate.* Voluptas *pleasure* non est digna *is not worthy* ad quam sapiens respiciat *that a wise man should regard it.*

145. Cùm vero *but when* relativa propositio *a relative proposition* supplet locum *supplies the place* substantivi *of a substantive,* verbum *the verb* ponitur *is put* in indicativo in *the indicative:* ut *as,* Num alii oratores *is one class of orators* probantur *approved of* à multitudine *by the multitude,* alii *another* ab iis qui intelligunt (*i.e.* à sapientibus) *by intelligent people?* Placavi *I appeased* quoscumque audivi *all whom I heard* querentes *complaining* de te *of you.*

146. Omnes voces *all words* positæ *placed* indefinitè *indefinitely,* vel *or* in obliquâ oratione *in an indirect sentence,* vel *or* sententiâ *in a sentence* pendente ab aliâ *depending on another,* postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood:* ut *as,* Innocentia *innocence* est *is* talis affectio *such a disposition* animi *of mind* quæ *as* noceat *hurts* nemini *no one.* Video *I see* cui scribam *to whom I am writing.* Credite *believe* experto *one who has tried* quantus *how (with what might)* assurgat *he rises* in clypeum *against the shield,* quo turbine *with what force* torqueat *he hurls* hastam *the spear.*

147. PRÆPOSITIONES *the prepositions* adversum adversus *against,* cis citra *on this side,* apud *near,* ante *before,* penesque *and in the power of,* intra *within,* infra *below,* contra *against,* supra *above,* post *after,* circiter *about (of time,)* inter *between, or among,* circa circum *around,* ultra *beyond,* juxta *near,* erga *towards,* præter *besides, or except,* et *and* extra *without,* ob *on account of,* prope *near,* per *through,* propter *on account of, and near,* versus *towards,* trans *across,* pone *behind,* secundum *according to,* ad *to,* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative:* ut *as,* Quem penes *in whose power* arbitrium *the decision is.* Ter *thrice* raptaverat *he had hurried* Hectora *Hector* circum *around* Iliacos muros *the Trojan walls* Propter *near* aquas

the waters. Amicitia *friendship* expetenda est *is to be sought* propter se *for its own sake.* Fugiens *flying from* pauperiem *poverty* per mare *over the sea.* Ludi *games* facti sunt *were celebrated* per decem dies *for ten days.* Per me unum *by my means alone* effectum est *has it been caused* ut *that* libertas *liberty* maneret *remains* in civitate *in the city.* Sophocles *Sophocles* fecit tragœdias *composed tragedies* ad summam senectutem *till extreme old age.* Locavi castra *I pitched my camp* ad Cybistra *at Cybistra.* Aliquot post menses *after some months* venit *he came* ad Cæsarem *to Cæsar.* Atra cura *ill-omened care* sedet *sits* post equitem *behind the horseman.* Cæsar *Cæsar* transduxit *led* copias suas *his forces* præter castra *by the camp.* Condemnatus est *he was condemned* omnibus sententiis *by all the votes* præter unam *but one.*

148. A (ante vocalem *before a vowel* ab) *from,* absque, sine *without,* coram *in the presence of,* cum *with,* de *concerning or from,* e (ante vocalem *before a vowel* ex) *out of,* præ *before, for,* pro *for, in front of,* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative:* ut *as,* A te *from you is* principium *the beginning,* desinet *it shall end* tibi *with you.* Discordia est mihi *I have a quarrel* tecum *with you.* Infans *an infant* animosus *spirited* non sine Dîs *not without the favour of the Gods.* Non potuit loqui *he could not speak* præ mœrore *for fear.* Stabat *he was standing* pro templo *in front of the temple* et *and* tenebat *was occupying* Capitolia celsa *the lofty Capitol.* Cuncta *everything* erant *was* pro hostibus *in favour of the enemy.* E consulatu *from his consulship* profectus est *he went* in Galliam *into Gaul.* Gessimus *we have administered* rempublicam *the republic* feliciter *successfully,* et *and* ex meâ sententiâ *according to my wish.*

149. In, super, sub, et *and* subter (quod tamen *which however* rarò invenitur *is seldom found)* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense in which they are used:* ut *as,* Imperium *the empire* Jovis *of Jupiter* est *is* in reges ipsos *over kings themselves.* Venit *he came* in Senatum *into the Senate.* Lucus fuit *there was a grove* in arce summâ *in the highest part of the citadel.* Proferet *he shall extend* imperium *his dominion* super *beyond* et *both* Garamantas *the Garamantes* et *and* Indos *the Indians.* Rogitans *asking* multa *many things* super Priamo *about Priam,* multa *many* super Hectore *about Hector.*

Venator *the huntsman* manet *remains* sub Jove frigido *under the cold sky.* Sub eas literas *after those letters* tuæ *yours* statim sunt recitatæ *were immediately read.* Multaque *and many things* me fugiunt *are forgotten by me* spectata *which were seen* primis sub annis *in my earliest years* Exercitus ejus *his army* missus est *was sent* sub jugum *under the yoke.* Duxit *he led* Æneam *Æneas* subter fastigia *under the roof* augusti tecti *of a small house.* Tuti *safe* subter *under* densâ testudine *a thick penthouse of shields.*

150. Tenus *as far as* regit *governs* ablativum singularem *an ablative singular,* ablativum vel genitivum pluralem *an ablative or genitive plural,* et *and* semper *always* sequitur *follows* casum suum *its case:* ut *as,* Abdidit ensem *he plunged his sword* lateri *in his side* capulo tenus *up to the hilt.* Et *and* paleari *his dewlap* pendent *hangs down* à mento *from his chin* crurum tenus *as far as his legs.* Altera sagitta *the second arrow* acta est *was driven* per jugulum *through his throat* pennis tenus *up to the feathers.*

151. Præpositio *a preposition* in compositione *in composition* nonnunquam *sometimes* regit *governs* eundem casum *the same case* quem *which* regebat *it governed* extra compositionem *out of composition:* ut *as,* Detrudunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopulo *from the rock.* Prætereunt *they pass* scopulos *the rocks* Ithacæ *of Ithaca.*

152. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* à, ab, ad, con, de, et *and* aliis præpositionibus *other prepositions,* sæpe *often* repetunt *repeat* eandem præpositionem *the same preposition:* ut *as,* Abstinuerunt *they abstained* à vino *from wine.*

153. INTERJECTIONES *interjections* non rarò ponuntur *are often put* sine casu *without a case:* ut *as,* Connixa *having yeaned* reliquit *she left* spem gregis *the hope of the flock,* ah *alas!* silice in nudâ *upon the bare flint stones.*

154. O, vocantis *uttered by one calling* jungitur *is joined* vocativo *to a vocative case,* exclamantis *by one exclaiming* vocativo *to a vocative* vel *or* accusativo *an accusative:* ut *as,* O nimium fortunatos agricolas *O too fortunate husbandmen,* si nôrint *if they knew* sua bona *their own happiness!* O formose puer *O beautiful boy,* ne crede *trust not* nimium *too much* colori *to your beauty.*

155. Heu, et *and* proh *alas!* junguntur *are joined* accusativo *to an accusative,* vel *or* vocativo *to a vocative:* ut *as,* Heu pietas *alas his piety!* Heu prisca fides *alas the ancient integrity!* Heu stirpem invisam *alas the odious stock!* Proh fidem *alas the help* deûm *of gods* atque *and* hominum *of men!* Proh sancte Jupiter *O sacred Jupiter!*

156. Hęi, et *and* væ *alas,* junguntur *are joined* dative *to a dative case:* ut *as,* Hei mihi *woe is me,* quod *that* amor *love* est *is* medicabilis *curable* nullis herbis *by no herbs!* Væ misero mihi *wretched man that I am,* quantâ de spe *from how great hope* decidi *am I fallen!*

157. En et *and* ecce *behold* junguntur *are joined* nominativo *to a nominative* vel *or* accusativo *to an accusative case:* ut *as,* Ecce tibi *behold* Italiæ tellus *the land of Italy.* En *behold* quatuor aras *four altars;* ecce *behold* duas *two* tibi *for you,* Daphni *Daphnis,* duoque altaria *and two altars* Phœbo *for Apollo.*

PROSODIA CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA *prosody* est *is* pars *that part* Grammaticæ *of Grammar*, quæ *which* docet *teaches* quantitatem *the quantity* (*or, due sound*) syllabarum *of syllables.*

Prosodia *prosody* dividitur *is divided* in tres partes *into three parts;* tonum *the tone,* spiritum *the breathing,* et *and* tempus *the time.*

Hoc loco *in this place* visum est nobis *it is thought most proper* tractare *to treat* tantùm *only* de tempore *of time.*

TEMPUS *time* est *is* mensura *the measure* syllabæ proferendæ *of a syllable to be uttered* (*or, of the pronouncing a syllable.*)

Tempus breve *a short time* notatur *is distinguished* sic *thus* (˘): ut *as for example,* Dŏmĭnŭs *the Lord;* autem *but* longum *a long time* sic *in this manner* (¯): ut *as,* cōntrā *against.*

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitutio *the placing together* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* pluriumve *or more* ex certâ observatione *according to the certain observation* temporum *of the times* (*or, measures of the syllables.*)

Pes *a foot* duarum longarum syllabarum *of two long syllables* est *is* spondæus *a spondee;* ut *as,* virtus *virtue.*

Longa syllaba *a long syllable* duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus *with two short syllables following* efficit *makes* dactylum *a dactyl;* ut *as,* scribere *to write.*

SCANSIO *scanning* est *is* legitima commensuratio *the measuring according to rule* versûs *of a verse* in singulos pedes *in every one* (*or, each one*) *of the feet.*

Scansioni *to scanning a verse* accidunt *there belong* figuræ *the figures called* Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et *and* Cæsura.

I. Synalœpha, est *is* elisio *the striking out* vocalis *of a vowel* in fine *at the end* dictionis *of a word* ante alteram *before another vowel* in initio *at the beginning* sequentis *of the following word;* ut *as,* vit' viv' *are here put* pro *for* vita vive, *in this verse:* Crastina vita *to-morrow's life* est *is* nimis sera *too late,* vive *live* hodie *to-day.*

At *but* heu, et *and* ô, nunquam intercipiuntur *are never struck out* (*or, cut off.*)

II. Ecthlipsis, est *is* quoties *as often as* m *the letter m* perimitur *is cut off* cum suâ vocali *with its vowel,* proximâ dictione *the next word* exorsâ *beginning* a vocali *with a vowel;* ut *as,* Monstr' horrend' pro *for* monstrum horrendum: Monstrum *a monster* horrendum *horrible,* informe *mis-shapen,* ingens *vast,* cui lumen ademptum *deprived of sight.*

III. Synæresis, est *is* contractio *the contraction* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* in unam *into one:* ut *as,* alvearia *is pronounced* quasi scriptum esset *as if it had been written* alvaria: ut *as,* Seu *or whether* alvearia *the hives* texta fuerint *were wove* lento vimine *of the limber osier.*

IV. Diæresis, est *is* ubi *when* ex unâ syllabâ *of one syllable* dissectâ *being dissected* (*or, the letters separated*) duæ *two syllables* fiunt *are made:* ut *as,* evoluisse pro *for* evolvisse: ut *as,* Debuerant *they ought* evoluisse *to have unwound* suos fusos *their spindles.*

V. Cæsura, est *is* cùm *when* post pedem absolutum *after a perfect foot* syllaba brevis *a short syllable* extenditur *is made long* in fine dictionis *at the end of the word:* ut *as,* Inhians *intent upon* pectoribus *the breasts (of the victims)* consulit *she consults* spirantia exta *their panting entrails.*

Of the Kinds of Verses.

VERSUS heroicus *an heroic verse,* qui *which* dicitur etiam *is also called* Hexameter *an Hexameter,* constat *consists* ex sex pedibus *of six feet:* Quintus locus *the fifth place of the verse* peculiariter *peculiarly* sibi vindicat *claims to itself* dactylum *a dactyl,* sextus *the sixth place requires* spondæum *a spondee;* reliqui *the other places* hunc vel illum *have this or that foot (either a dactyl or a spondee)* prout volumus *even as we will:* ut *as,* Tityre *o Tityrus,* tu *thou* recubans *lying along* sub tegmine *under the covering* patulæ fagi *of a wide-spreading beech-tree.*

Spondæus *a spondee* etiam *also* aliquando *sometimes* reperitur *is found* in quinto loco *in the fifth place:* ut *as,* Cara soboles *thou dear offspring* deûm *of the gods,* magnum incrementum *the illustrious progeny* Jovis *of Jupiter!*

Ultima syllaba *the last syllable* cujuscunque versûs *of every verse* habetur *is accounted* communis *common.*

VERSUS elegiacus *an elegiac verse,* qui et *which also* habet *hath* nomen *the name* Pentametri *of Pentameter,* constat *consisteth* è duplici Penthemimeri *of two Penthemimers;* quarum prior *the former of which* comprehendit *contains* duos pedes *two feet,* dactylicos *dactyls,* spondiacos *spondees,* vel *or* alterutros *either of them,* cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable:* altera *the other Penthemimer* etiam *contains also* duos pedes *two feet,* sed *but* omninò dactylicos *always* (*or, altogether*) *dactyls,* item *likewise* cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable:* ut *as,* Amor *love* est *is* res *a thing* plena *full* solliciti timoris *of anxious fear.*

Of the Quantity of first Syllables.

I. Vocalis *a vowel* ante duas consonantes *before two consonants,* aut *or* duplicem *a double consonant* in eâdem dictione *in the same word,* est *is* ubique longa *every where long* positione *by position:* ut *as in the words,* ventus *the wind,* axis *an axletree,* patrizo *to do like his father.*

II. Quòd si *but if* consonans *a consonant* claudat *endeth* priorem dictionem *the former word,* sequente *the following word* item *also* inchoante *beginning* a consonante *with a consonant,* vocalis præcedens *the vowel going before* etiam *also* longa erit *will be long* positione *by position:* ut *as,* Major sum *I am greater* quàm *than* cui *one whom* fortuna *fortune* possit *is able* nocere *to hurt.* Syllabæ *the syllables* jor, sum, quàm, et *and* sit, longæ sunt *are here long* positione *by position.*

(a.) At si *but if* prior dictio *the former word* exeat *ends* in vocalem brevem *in a short vowel,* sequente *the following word* incipiente *beginning* à duabus consonantibus *with two consonants,* interdum *sometimes* producitur *it is made long,* sed *but* rariùs *very seldom:* ut *as,* Ferte *bring* ferrum *arms* citi *promptly,* date tela *hurl your javelins,* scandite muros *scale the walls.*

III. Vocalis brevis *a short vowel* ante mutam *before a mute,* sequente liquidâ *a liquid following,* redditur *is rendered* communis *common:* ut *as in the words,* patris *of a father,* volucris *of a bird.* Quæ tamen regula *which rule however* non obtinet *does not prevail* in compositis *in compound words:* ut *as,* ādmiror *I admire,* ābripio *I carry off,* sūbruo *I overthrow,* ōbruo *I overthrow.*

VOCALIS *a vowel* ante alteram *before another vowel* in eâdem dictione *in the same word* est *is* ubique brevis *every where short:* ut *as in the words,* Deus *God,* meus *mine,* tuus *thine,* pius *pious.*

1. Excipias *you may except* genitivos *the genitive cases* in ius *ending in ius:* ut *as,* unius *of one,* illius *of that,* &c. *and some others;* ubi *in which words* i *the vowel i* reperitur *is found* communis *common;* licet *although* in alterĭus *in the word* alterĭus *of another* semper sit *it is always* brevis *short;* in alīus *in the word* alīus *of another* semper longa *it is always long.*

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam *except likewise* genitivi *the genitive cases* et *and* dativi *the dative* quintæ declinationis *of the fifth declension,* ubi e *where the vowel e* inter geminum i *between two i's* longa fit *is made long;* ut *as in the word,* faciei *of a face:* alioqui non *otherwise not;* ut *as in the words,* rei *of a thing,* spei *of hope,* fidei *of faith.*

Etiam *also* fi *the syllable fi* in fio *in the word* fio *to be made or done* est longa *is long;* nisi *unless* e et r *the letters e and r* sequuntur *follow* simul *together;* ut *as in* fierem, fieri: Jam *now* omnia *all things* fiunt *are done,* quæ *which* negabam *I denied* posse *were able* fieri *to be done.*

Dius *heavenly* habet *hath* primam syllabam *the first syllable* longam *long;* Diana *the goddess Diana* communem *hath the first syllable common.*

Interjectio Ohe *the interjection ohe* habet *has* priorem syllabam *the former syllable* communem *common;* eheu *alas* semper *always* producit penultimam *makes the penultima long.*

Vocalis *a vowel* ante alteram *before another* in Græcis dictionibus *in Greek words* subinde *now and then* fit longa *is made long:* ut *as,* Dicite, Pierides *say, O ye Muses:* Respice Laërten *have regard to Laertes.*

Et *and also* in Græcis possessivis *in Greek possessives:* ut *as,* Æneïa nutrix *Æneas' nurse,* Rhodopeïus Orpheus *Orpheus of Rhodope.*

Omnis diphthongus *every diphthong* longa est *is long* apud Latinos *with the Latins:* ut *as,* aurum *gold,* neuter *neither,* musæ *of a song, or songs:* nisi *except* sequente vocali *when a vowel followeth,* cùm *when* interdum *sometimes* corripitur *it is made short:* ut *as,* præire *to go before,* præustus *burnt at one end.*

DERIVATIVA *derivatives* (*or, words derived of others*) ferè *commonly* sortiuntur *have* eandem quantitatem *the same quantity* cum primitivis *with their primitives* (*or, the words they are derived from:*) ut *as,* amator *a lover,* amicus *a friend,* amabilis *amiable;* primâ brevi *the first syllable being short* ab amo *as being derived from the verb* amo *I love.*

Excipiuntur tamen *except however* pauca *a few words,* quæ *which* deducta *being derived* a brevibus *from short syllables,* producunt *make long* primam syllabam *the first syllable:* ut *as,* como *to deck the hair,* a coma *derived from* coma *the hair;* fomes *fuel* et *and* fomentum *an assuaging plaister* a *from* foveo *to cherish;* humanus *human, or humane,* ab homo *derived from* homo *a man or woman;* jucundus *pleasant,* a *from* juvo *to delight;* jumentum *a beast of burthen,* a *from* juvo *to help;* lex legis *a law,* a *from* lego *to read;* macero *to cause to waste away,* a *from* macer *thin;* mobilis *moveable,* a *from* moveo *to move;* persona *a mask,* a *from* persono *to sound through;* rex regis *a king,* regina *a queen,* regula *a rule,* a *from* rego *to rule;* secius (*comparative*) a *from* secus *otherwise;* sedes *a seat,* a *from* sedeo *to sit;* stipendium *pay* a *from* stips stipis *a coin;* tegula *a tile,* a *from* tego *to cover;* tragula *a javelin* (*also a drag-net,*) a *from* traho *to draw;* vox vocis *a voice,* a *from* voco *to call.*

Et *and* contrà *on the other hand* sunt *there are some words* quæ *which* deducta *though derived* a longis *from primitives of a long syllable,* corripiunt *make short* primam *the first syllable:* ut *as,* arena *sand,* arista *the beard of corn,* arundo *a reed,* ab *derived from* areo *to be dry;* aruspex *a sòòthsayer,* ab *derived from* ara *an altar;* dicax *a jester,* maledicus *speaking ill,* a *from* dico *to speak;* ditio *power,* a *from* ditis *rich;* dux ducis *a leader,* a *from* duco *to lead;* fides *faith,* perfidus *perfidious,* a *from* fido *to trust;* fragor *a noise or crash,* fragilis *frail,* a *from* frango *to break;* labo *to totter,* a *from* labor *to slip;* lucerna *a candle,* a *from* luceo *to shine;* molestus *troublesome,* a *from* moles *trouble;* odium *hatred,* ab *from* odi *to hate;* paciscor *to bargain,* a *from* pax pacis *peace;* quandoquidem *since,* a *from* quando *when;* siquidem *since,* a *from* si *if;* sopor *a sound sleep,* a *from* sopio *to lull to sleep.*

Et *and* alia nonnulla *some other words* ex utroque genere *of either sort,* quæ *which* relinquuntur *are left* observanda *to be observed* studiosis *by the studious* inter legendum *in their reading.*

COMPOSITA *compound words* sequuntur *follow* quantitatem *the quantity* simplicium *of their simple words:* ut *as,* à *from* lego legis *to read, comes* perlego *to read through;* à *from* lego legas *to send as an ambassador,* allego *to allege or accuse by messengers;* à *from* potens *powerful,* impotens *weak;* à *from* solor *to cheer,* consolor *to comfort.*

Hæc tamen brevia *but these words having short syllables* enata *though derived* a longis *from long syllables* excipiuntur *are excepted:* ut *as,* dejero *to swear a great oath,* pejero *to forswear,* a *from* juro *to swear;* innuba *unmarried,* pronuba *a bride's-maid,* a *from* nubo *to be married.*

OMNE præteritum *every preterperfect tense* dissyllabum *of two syllables* habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable* longam *long:* ut *as,* legi *I have read,* emi *I have bought,* movi *I have moved.*

1. Excipias tamen *but you must except the words,* bibi *I drank,* dedi *I gave,* scidi *I have cut,* steti *I have stood,* stiti *I have stayed,* tuli *I have borne or suffered,* et *and* fidi, a *from* findo *to cleave.*

2. Geminantia *words that double* primam *the first syllable* præteriti *of the preterperfect tense* habent *have* primam *the first syllable* brevem *short:* ut *as,* cecĭdi *I have fallen,* à *from* cado *to fall;* cecĭdi *I have beaten,* a *from* cædo *to beat;* didici *I have learned,* fefelli *I have deceived,* momordi *I have bitten,* pependi *I have weighed,* pupugi *I have pricked,* tetendi *I have stretched,* tetigi *I have touched,* totondi *I have sheared,* tutudi *I have thumped.*

SUPINUM dissyllabum *a supine of two syllables* habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable* longam *long:* ut *as,* visum *to see,* latum *to bear or suffer,* lotum *to wash,* motum *to move.*

Excipe *except* datum *to give,* itum *to go,* litum *to daub,* ratum *to suppose,* rutum *to rush,* satum *to sow,* situm *to suffer,* statum *to stop,* et *and* citum, a *from* cieo cies *to stir up;* nam *for* citum, a *from* cio cis *to make to go,* quartæ *of the fourth conjugation,* habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable* longam *long.*

Penultima *the last syllable but one* tertiæ personæ pluralis *of the third person plural* perfecti activi *of the perfect active* desinens *ending in* -erunt habenda est *is to be considered* communis *common,* si *if* antepenultima *the syllable before it* brevis sit *be short.*

Of the Quantity of last Syllables.

I. A FINITA *words ending in a* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* ama *love thou,* contra *against,* erga *towards.*

Excipias *except,* ita *so,* quia *because,* eia *well.* Item *also* omnes casus *all cases* in a *ending in a,* cujuscunque fuerint generis *of whatever gender they are,* numeri *number,* aut *or* declinationis *declension;* præter *except* vocativos *the vocative cases* à Græcis in as *of Greek words ending in as:* ut *as,* O Ænea *o Æneas:* et *and* ablativum *the ablative case* primæ declinationis *of the first declension:* ut *as,* musâ *with a song.*

II. Desinentia *words ending in* b, d, t, puris *pure,* brevia sunt *are short:* ut *as,* ab *from,* ad *to,* caput *the head.*

III. Desinentia in c *words ending in c* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* ac *and,* sic *so,* et *and* adverbium *the adverb* hìc *here.*

Sed *but* fac *do thou,* nec *neither,* donec *until,* corripiuntur *are made short.*

Pronomen *the pronoun* hic *he,* et *and* neutrum ejus *its neuter* hoc, modo *so that* non sit *it be not* ablativi casûs *of the ablative case,* communia sunt *are common.*

IV. Finita e *words ending in e* brevia sunt *are short:* ut *as,* mare *the sea,* pene *almost,* lege *read thou,* scribe *write thou.*

1. Omnes voces *all words* quintæ inflectionis *of the fifth declension* in e *ending in e* excipiendæ sunt *are to be excepted:* ut *as,* fide *the ablative case of* fides *faith,* et *and* die *in the day,* unà cum particulis *together with the particles* indè enatis *that are derived from it:* ut *as,* hodie *to-day,* quotidie *daily,* pridie *the day before,* postridie *the day after;* item *also* quare *wherefore,* et *and* si qua sunt similia *if there be any of the like sort.*

2. Et item *and also* secundæ personæ singulares *the second persons singular* secundæ conjugationis *of the second conjugation:* ut *as,* doce *teach,* move *move:* præter *except* cave *beware,* quod *which* plerumque *generally* corripit ultimam *makes the last syllable short.*

Etiam *also* monosyllaba *monosyllables* in e *ending in e* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* me *me,* te *thee,* se *himself or themselves:* præter *except* conjunctiones encliticas *the enclitical conjunctions,* que *and,* n *whether,* ve *or.*

Quin et *and moreover* adverbia *adverbs* in e *ending in e*, deducta *derived* ab adjectivis *from adjectives* secundæ declinationis *of the second declension*, habent *have* e *the letter e* longum *long:* ut *as*, pulchre *beautifully*, docte *learnedly*, valde pro *for* valide *mightily*.

Quibus *to which the adverbs* ferme, fere, *almost* accedunt *are added:* tamen *yet* bene *well* et *and* male *ill* omnino corripiuntur *are always made short*.

Postremo *lastly*, quæ *such words as* scribuntur *are written* à Græcis per η *with the Greek letter* η (*or, long* e) producuntur *are long* naturâ *by nature*, cujuscunque fuerint casûs *of whatever case they are*, generis *gender*, aut *or* numeri *number:* ut *as*, Lethe *the river so called*, Anchise *a proper name*, cete *whales*, Tempe *the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly*.

V. Finita i *words ending in i* longa sunt *are long:* ut *as*, domini *lords*, magistri *masters*, amari *to be loved*.

Præter *except* mihi *to me*, tibi *to thee*, sibi *to himself or themselves*, ubi *where*, ibi *there;* quæ *which words* sunt *are* communia *common*.

Nisi *except*, et *and* quasi *as if*, corripiuntur *are made short*.

Dativi quoque *also the dative* et vocativi singulares *and vocative cases singular* nominum propriorum *of proper names* in is *ending in is* derivatorum *derived* a Græcis *from the Greeks*, quorum genitivus *whose genitive* crescit *increases* penultimâ brevi *with a short penultima*, corripiuntur *are short:* ut as, dativi *the dative cases* Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi; vocativi *the vocative cases* Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, *all proper names*.

VI. Finita l *words ending in l* corripiuntur *are made short:* ut *as*, animal *an animal*, Hannibal *a proper name*, mel *honey*, pugil *a champion*, consul *a consul*.

Præter *except the words* nil (contractum *contracted* a *from* nihil *nothing*,) sal *salt*, et *and* sol *the sun*.

VII. N finita *words ending in n* corripiuntur *are short:* ut *as*, an *whether*, carmen *a song*, in *in*, Ilion *Troy*, Ityn *Ityn*.

Quin *moreover*, non *not*, excipiuntur *are excepted;* et *and* nomina pauca *a few nouns* derivata *derived* a Græcis *from the Greeks*, quæ *which* producunt *lengthen* penultimam *the penultima* genitivi *of the genitive:* ut *as*, delphin delphinis *a dolphin;* Xenophon Xenophontis *Xenophon*.

Accŭsativi quoque *also the accusative cases* masculini *masculine* primæ declinationis *of the first declension* in an et en *ending in and en* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* Æneān *Æneas,* Anchisēn *Anchises;* et *and* accusativi fœminini *feminine accusatives* in en et ran *in en and ran:* ut *as,* Penelopen *Penelope,* Electran *Electra:* cæteri fœminini *the other feminine accusatives* in an *ending in an* corripiuntur *are short:* ut *as,* Maian *Maia,* Iphigenian *Iphigenia.*

VIII. O finita *words ending in o* longa sunt *are long:* ut *as,* dico *I say,* virgo *a virgin,* porro *moreover,* legendo *in reading.* Modo *only* et *and* composita ejus *its compounds* excipiuntur *are excepted;* et *and* scio *I know,* nescio *I know not,* puto *I suppose,* cito *soon,* ego *I,* homo *a man,* cedo *tell me,* quæ *which* corripiuntur *are short.*

(*a.*) Pauca alia sunt verba *there are a few other verbs* in o desinentia *ending in o* quæ *which* interdum *sometimes* corripiunt *shorten* ultimam *the last syllable:* ut *as,* Tĕ peto *I demand you* quem *whom* merui *I have deserved.* Non ero *I will not be,* terra *o earth,* tuus *yours.* Fassa *confessing* fortunam *her fortune* tegendo *by covering* vultus suos *her face.* Sed *but* hæc exempla *these examples* non sunt *are not* imitanda *to be imitated* à tironibus *by beginners.*

Propria nomina *proper names* virorum *of men* desinentia in o *ending in o* communia sunt *are common:* ut *as,* Pollio, Naso.

Duo quoque *also* duo *two* et *and* nemo *nobody* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* communem *common.*

IX. Finita r *words ending in r* corripiuntur *are made short* s ut *as,* Cæsar *a proper name,* per *by,* vir *a man,* uxor *a wife,* turtur *a turtle.*

Autem *but (these words)* producuntur *are made long;* far *bread-corn,* Lar *an household god,* Nar *the river so called,* ver *the spring,* fur *a thief,* cur *why;* quoque *also* par *equal to or like* cum compositis *with its compounds:* ut *as,* compar *a companion,* impar *unequal,* dispar *unlike.*

Græca etiam *also Greek words* in er *ending in er,* quæ *which* illis *among them* desinunt *end* in ηρ *in the long ē before r;* ut *as,* aër *the air,* crater *a cup,* character *a mark or sign,* æther *the sky;* præter *except* pater *a father* et *and* mater *a mother,* quæ *which* apud Latinos *with Latin authors* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* brevem *short.*

X. Finita s *words ending in s* habent *have* pares terminationes *the like terminations* cum numero *with the number* vocalium *of the vowels ;* nempe *namely,* as, es, is, os, us, ys.

I. As finita *words ending in as* producuntur *are made long :* ut *as,* amas *thou lovest,* Musas *the Muses,* majestas *majesty,* bonitas *goodness.*

Præter *except* nomina propria Græca *Greek proper names,* quorum genitivus singularis *whose genitive case singular* habet *has* penultimam *the penultima* brevem *short :* ut *as,* Arcas, Pallas, *proper names,* genitivo *in the genitive case* Arcados, Pallados.

Et *and* præter *except* accusativos plurales *the accusative cases plural* formatos *formed* Græco more *in the Greek manner :* ut *as,* heros *a hero,* heroas ; gigas *a giant,* gigantas.

II. Finitas es *words ending in es* longa sunt *are long :* ut *as,* Anchises *the father of Æneas,* sedes *thou sittest,* doces *thou teachest,* patres *fathers.*

Nomina in es *nouns ending in es* tertiæ inflectionis *of the third declension,* quæ *which* corripiunt *make short* penultimam *the last syllable save one* genitivi crescentis *of the genitive case increasing* excipiuntur *are excepted :* ut *as,* miles *a soldier,* seges *standing corn,* dives *rich.* Sed *but* aries *a ram,* abies *a fir-tree,* paries *the wall of a house,* Ceres *the goddess of corn,* et *and* pes *a foot,* una cum compositis *together with its compounds,* ut *as,* bipes *having two feet,* tripes *having three,* longa sunt *are long.*

Quoque *also* es *thou art,* a *from* sum *I am,* una cum compositis *together with its compounds,* corripitur *is made short :* ut *as,* potes *thou art able,* ades *thou art present,* prodes *thou profitest,* obes *thou hinderest :* quibus *to which* penes *in the power of* potest *may* adjungi *be added.*

Item *also* neutra *words of the neuter gender,* et *and* nominativi plurales *the nominative cases plural* Græcorum *of certain Greek words* ὁ ut *as,* hippomanes *a raging humour in mares,* cacoëthes *an ill habit,* Cyclopes *giants so called,* Naïades *fairies of rivers and fountains.*

III. Finita is *words ending in is* brevia sunt *are short :* ut *as,* Paris *a proper name,* panis *bread,* tristis *sorrowful,* hilaris *merry.*

1. Excipe *except* obliquos casus plurales *the oblique cases plural* in is *ending in is,* qui *which* producuntur *are made long :* ut *as,* musis *the dative and ablative case plural* a *of*

musa *a muse or song,* mensis, a *of* mensa *a table,* dominis *to or by lords,* templis *temples,* et *and* quis, pro *for* quibus *whom.*

2. Item *also* producentia *such words as make long* penultimam *the last syllable save one* genitivi crescentis *of the genitive case increasing :* ut *as,* Samnis *a Samnite,* Salamis *an isle by Athens ;* genitivo *in the genitive case,* Samnitis, Salaminis.

3. Et item *and also* omnia monosyllaba *all monosyllables :* ut *as,* vis *strength,* lis *strife :* præter *except* is *he* et *and* quis *who* nominativos *in the nominative case,* et *and* bis *twice* apud Ovidium *in Ovid.*

Secunda persona singularis *the second person singular* præsentis activi *of the present active* quartæ conjugationis *of the fourth conjugation* producit is *makes is long :* ut *as,* audis *you hear ;* sic *so* possis *you may be able,* velis *you may be willing,* nolis *you may be unwilling,* malis *you may prefer.*

Secundæ personæ singulares *the second persons singular* futuri secundi activi indicativi *of the second future indicative active,* et *and* perfecti subjunctivi *of the perfect subjunctive,* faciunt *make* is commune *is common :* ut *as,* feceris *you will have made,* dederis *you may have given.*

(a.) Porro *moreover* in his temporibus *in these tenses* secunda persona pluralis *the second person plural* habet *has* penultimam *the penultima* communem *common :* ut *as,* dixeritis *you will have said,* transieritis *you will have passed.*

Gratis *for nothing* et *and* foris *out of doors* producunt ultimam *make the last syllable long.*

IV. Os finita *words ending in os* producuntur *are made long :* ut *as,* honos *honour,* nepos *a grandson,* dominos *lords,* servos *servants.*

Præter *except* compos *he that hath ability or power in something,* impos *that is unable, or not having power,* os ossis *a bone,* et *and* exos *without bones.*

Et *and* nomina propria *proper names* derivata *derived* a Græcis *from Greek names in os :* ut *as,* Delos *an isle in the Ægean sea,* Chaos *a confused heap of things,* Pallados *the genitive case of* Pallas *Minerva,* Phyllidos *the genitive case of* Phyllis, *a proper name.*

V. Us finita *words ending in us* corripiuntur *are made short :* ut *as,* famulus *a man-servant,* regius *royal,* tempus *time,* amamus *we love.*

Producentia *words that make long* penultimam *the last syllable but one* genitivi crescentis *of the genitive case in-*

creasing excipiuntur *are excepted:* ut *as,* salus *health,* tellus *the earth;* genitivo *in the genitive case,* salutis, telluris.

Etiam *also* omnes voces *all words* quartæ inflectionis *of the fourth declension* in us *ending in us* longæ sunt *are long,* præter *except* nominativum *the nominative* et *and* vocativum *the vocative case* singulares *in the singular number:* ut *as,* genitivo singulari *in the genitive case singular* manûs *of a hand;* nominativo, accusativo, vocativo plurali *in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural* manus *hands.*

Etiam *also* monosyllaba *monosyllables* accedunt *are added* his *to these:* ut *as,* crus *the leg, from the knee to the ancle,* thus *frankincense,* mus *a mouse,* sus *a sow.*

Et item *and also* Græca *Greek words* per *ovς* diphthongum *ending with the diphthong ous,* cujuscunque fuerint casûs *of whatever case they be:* ut *as,* nominativo *in the nominative case* Panthus, Melampus, *proper names;* genitivo *in the genitive case,* Sapphûs, Cliûs, *proper names.*

VI. Ys finita *words ending in ys* corripiuntur *are short:* ut *as,* Itys *Itys.*

XI. U finita omnia *all words ending in u* producuntur *are made long:* ut *as,* manu *the ablative case of* manus *a hand,* genu *a knee,* amatu *to be loved,* diu *a long time.*

XII. Y finita *nouns ending in y* corripiuntur *are short: ut as,* Tiphy *Tiphys.*

ETON
PRINTED BY E. P. WILLIAMS.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018